ANNOTATIONS AT ANALYTICAL LEVEL

Instructions for annotators

Jan Hajič, Jarmila Panevová, Eva Buráňová, Zdeňka Urešová, Alla Bémová

In cooperation with Jiří Kárník, Jan Štěpánek, Petr Pajas

11.10.1999

UK MFF ÚFAL Praha

Edited by: Eva Hajičová, Petr Sgall
English translation: Zdeněk Kirschner
Conversion to DocBook XML: Jiří Havelka, Petr Pajas, Jan Štěpánek

Project MŠMT VS96151, grants GAČR 405/96/0198 and 405/96/K214.
# Table of Contents

1. Environments ........................................... 1
   1.1. Organizational incorporation and financing ............. 1
   1.2. Structures in the framework of the project ............. 1
      1.2.1. Morphological level ................................ 1
         1.2.1.1. Word-form (attribute form, SGML attribute <i>)... 2
         1.2.1.2. Lemma (lemma, SGML attribute <l>) ............ 2
         1.2.1.3. Morphological marker (attribute tag, SGML attribute <t>)... 4
      1.2.2. Analytical level .................................. 6
      1.2.3. Tectogrammatical level ............................ 6
2. Principles of Annotation ................................ 8
   2.1. Formal structure ..................................... 8
   2.2. Attributes of a node ................................. 8
   2.3. Relation to the morphological level .................... 9
3. Rules of annotation ..................................... 11
   3.1. List of analytical functions .......................... 13
      3.2. A simple sentence (clause) containing a verb; parts of sentence in a dependency relation ........................................... 13
         3.2.1. Predicate Pred, Pnom, AuxV ....................... 15
            3.2.1.1. INFO PRED .................................... 15
            3.2.1.2. Delimitation of the predicate ................. 16
            3.2.1.3. Compound verb forms ....................... 19
            3.2.1.4. Simple verbal predicate ...................... 19
            3.2.1.5. Compound verbal predicate .................... 22
            3.2.1.6. verbal nominal predicate ..................... 28
            3.2.1.7. Predicate purely nominal in two-member sentences ................................. 39
            3.2.1.8. Distinguishing state and passive ............. 40
      3.2.2. Subject Sb ........................................ 41
            3.2.2.1. INFO SB ...................................... 41
            3.2.2.2. Definition of subject ....................... 42
            3.2.2.3. Expression of a subject ..................... 42
            3.2.2.4. Possible confusion of subject and object ....... 53
      3.2.3. Attribute Atr, AtrAdv, AdvAtr, AtrAtr, AtrObj, ObjAtr .... 54
            3.2.3.1. INFO ATR ...................................... 54
            3.2.3.2. Defining Atr .................................. 55
            3.2.3.3. Combined functions ........................... 56
            3.2.3.4. Expression of Atr ............................ 58
            3.2.3.5. Non-agreeing attribute in a non-projective position in the sentence ... 69
      3.2.4. Object Obj, ObjAtr, AtrObj ........................ 71
            3.2.4.1. INFO OBJ .................................... 71
            3.2.4.2. Definition of Obj ............................ 71
            3.2.4.3. Combined functions ........................... 72
3.2.4.4. Expressing Obj .................................................. 72
3.2.4.5. Object of the type Origin and Result .......................... 83
3.2.4.6. Object after copulas and semi-copulas ........................ 84
3.2.5.  Adverbials (and borderline cases) ................................ 85
  3.2.5.1. INFO ADV .................................................. 85
  3.2.5.2. Specification of adverbials ................................... 86
  3.2.5.3. Combined functions ......................................... 90
  3.2.5.4. Problematic cases of temporal modifications ............... 91
  3.2.5.5. Problems of local adverbial ................................ 101
  3.2.5.6. The boundaries of Adv and Atv .............................. 103
  3.2.5.7. Expression of adverbials ................................. 106
  3.2.5.8. Kinds of adverbials according to meaning .................. 112
3.2.6.  Complement (verbal attribute) Atv, AtvV .......................... 133
  3.2.6.1. INFO ATV .................................................. 133
  3.2.6.2. Definition of complement .................................... 134
  3.2.6.3. Getting the complement suspended ........................... 134
  3.2.6.4. Misinterpretation of complement ............................ 136
  3.2.6.5. Criteria for diagnosing the complement ..................... 137
  3.2.6.6. Expressing the complement ................................. 140
  3.2.6.7. Complement with a transformed predicate ................... 152
  3.2.7.1. Subordinating conjunctions AuxC ............................ 153
  3.2.7.2. Prepositions AuxP ........................................... 161
  3.2.7.3. Emphasizing words AuxZ ..................................... 163
  3.2.7.4. Emotional, rhythmic particles (mi, vám, si...; to, ono) AuxO ........................................... 172
  3.2.7.5. Reflexivum tantum (se, sí) AuxT .............................. 174
  3.2.7.6. Reflexive passive (se), AuxR ................................ 175
  3.2.7.7. Parts of multi-word constructions, some particles, decayed parenthesis AuxY ........................................... 175
3.2.8.  Graphic symbols (punctuation); the root of the tree AuxS, AuxK, AuxX, AuxG .................................................. 188
  3.2.8.1. The root of the tree AuxS ..................................... 189
  3.2.8.2. Terminal symbol of the sentence AuxK ........................ 190
  3.2.8.3. Comma AuxX .................................................. 193
  3.2.8.4. Punctuation, other graphic symbols AuxG .................... 195
3.3.  Ellipses — one-member sentences without a verb .................. 203
  3.3.1. Ellipsis ExD, ExD_Co ........................................... 203
    3.3.1.1. INFO EXD .................................................. 203
    3.3.1.2. Specification of ellipsis and the afun ExD .................. 204
    3.3.1.3. Ellipses treated by means of afun ExD ..................... 206
    3.3.1.4. Ellipses solved without afun ExD ........................... 211
  3.3.2. One-member sentences without a verb ExD, ExD_Co ............ 218
3.4. Relations between sentences and sentence parts (other than dependency)......... 221
  3.4.1. Coordination (sentential, of sentence parts) Coord, <afun>_Co................. 221
    3.4.1.1. INFO_CO ......................................................................................... 221
    3.4.1.2. Specification of coordination ............................................................. 222
    3.4.1.3. Treatment of coordination ................................................................. 222
    3.4.1.4. Coordinated members introduced by means of AuxP or AuxC............. 233
    3.4.1.5. Joint modification of coordinated members ......................................... 236
  3.4.2. Apposition Apos, <afun>_Ap .................................................................. 238

3.5. Parenthesis ................................................................................................... 243
  3.5.1. General rules ............................................................................................ 243
  3.5.2. A 'frozen' parenthesis AuxY_Pa ............................................................... 246
  3.5.3. An independent sentential form (containing a predicate) Pred_Pa .............. 247
  3.5.4. A syntactically incorporated sentence part with <afun>_Pa ....................... 249
  3.5.5. A syntactially non-incorporated sentence part or sentential form; ellipsis; an
        independent sentence part; vocative; interjection Exd_Pa ............................ 250

3.6. Complex phenomena ...................................................................................... 252
  3.6.1. Direct speech ............................................................................................ 252
  3.6.2. Addresses and names of persons and institutions ....................................... 257
  3.6.3. Expression with numerals, figures in different functions ............................ 262
  3.6.4. Referring words ....................................................................................... 275
  3.6.5. The boundary line between free and 'bound' dative ................................. 283
  3.6.6. Collocations, phraseologisms (phrasemes) .............................................. 285
  3.6.7. Accompaniment ....................................................................................... 287
  3.6.8. Reflexive se, si .......................................................................................... 288
  3.6.9. Phrases of comparison with conjunctions jako (as), než (than) ................. 291
        3.6.9.1. The placement of the conjunction ....................................................... 291
        3.6.9.2. Syntactic function of comparison ...................................................... 292
        3.6.9.3. Structures assigned Adv ................................................................... 292
        3.6.9.4. Phrases assigned ExD ...................................................................... 296
        3.6.9.5. Addition 1 ....................................................................................... 298
        3.6.9.6. Addition 2 ....................................................................................... 298
        3.6.9.7. Addition 3 ....................................................................................... 301
  3.6.10. Foreign words in the text ....................................................................... 302
  3.6.11. Bibliographical references .................................................................... 305
  3.6.12. Composed Czech proper names ............................................................. 306
  3.6.13. Freely adjoined sentence parts .............................................................. 307

4. Additions ............................................................................................................ 309
  4.1. List of secondary prepositions ..................................................................... 309
Chapter 1. Environments

1.1. Organizational incorporation and financing

The manual annotation of Czech sentences is carried out in the framework of experimental verification of the definition of formal representation of the analysis of Czech sentences (the project GAČR 405/96/0198, “Formal representation of language structures”). The material obtained in this way (data) will be made use of in many domains of research in computational linguistics, above all as basic (training) data in projects of language modeling worked out in the framework of the “Laboratory for language data processing” (the project MŠMT VS96151) and of the Center for Computational Linguistics. These data will also be used as verification material for various partial projects within the complex program GAČR 405/96/K214 (“Czech Language in Computer Age”). It is from the mentioned additional sources that manual annotation is supported also financially, especially in order to make available a volume of data sufficient for statistical experiments as well.

1.2. Structures in the framework of the project

The project of annotation of Czech texts in the PDT covers three levels: morphological, analytical and tectogrammatical.

Annotation at all of the levels is based on Czech texts having a SGML format (CSTS DTD), which is the basic format of the Czech National Corpus (ČNK). Most of the texts have been taken directly from ČNK. The Czech texts are already divided into separate words (word-forms), sentences and paragraphs in this format. Punctuation is explicitly marked and graphic information from the original text has been preserved wherever possible. Numbers in numerical form are also marked and decimals are normalized.

Texts chosen at random (in continuous samples) from the texts of ČNK are used for annotations at all levels.

1.2.1. Morphological level

The annotation (tagging) at the morphological level is linear. To each original word-form (name of the attribute: origf, SGML, attribute <w>) in the text, three attributes are assigned; namely word-form, lemma and tag. Tagging is manual with the aid of a full-screen program sgd working in the environment of Linux (which, however, can be carried on through the mediation of some remote means, e.g. from DOS). We are using also a MS Windows program called DA, which is compatible with sgd at the data level and which is very close also on the GUI level. Both programs require a preliminary morphological treatment of the original text, i.e., each
word-form from it is supposed to be accompanied by a list of all possible lemmas and of their (possible) morphological categories. This assignment is done automatically on the basis of an electronic dictionary (at present the vocabulary covers some 98-99% of current newspaper or magazine texts, including names). The remaining word-forms are supplied by manual tagging. Typing errors are kept in the attribute `origf`; however, they are corrected (manually) and treated in the attribute `form`.

Morphological tagging with the aid of the program sgd (or DA) can be performed prior to annotation at the analytical level, but also after this has been accomplished, or in parallel. Both input and output data for the morphological annotation programs are in the SGML format according to the CSTS DTD. The volume of texts tagged at the morphological level is about 1.8 million tokens.

1.2.1.1. Word-form (attribute `form`, SGML attribute `<f>`)

In most of the cases the word-form is identical with the original word-form as it has been found in the original text including the use of lower and/or upper case letters. Exceptions occur only in case the original word-form represents

- a number containing a decimal point
- the words `aby`, `kdyby` (to, in order to, so that, if) (denoting purpose, condition)
- a compact (contracted) form of a preposition linked with a pronoun (e.g., `naň`, `proň`, `zaň`, `oč`, `zač`)
- a word with an `-s` added to indicate 2nd person singular of the verb `být` (to be) (e.g., `tys`, `ses`, `udělals`)
- a typing error

In these cases the form (`form`) is derived from the original word-form (`origf`) in the following way:
1. Environments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>origf</th>
<th># of form attr.</th>
<th>1st or the only form</th>
<th>2nd form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>number with a decimal point</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>number with a decimal point</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form of the word aby/kdyby</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>aby/kdyby</td>
<td>conditional by in corresponding form (e.g., bychom)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preposition with a pronoun</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>preposition</td>
<td>pronoun in the corresp. (long) form (e.g. naň -&gt; na + něj)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word with an -s typing error</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>word without -s jsi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typing error with contracted forms</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>see line 2 - 4 corrected</td>
<td>see line 2 - 4 corrected form</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.2.1.2. Lemma (lemma, SGML attribute <l>)

The lemma unequivocally identifies a word as a lexical unit. It is represented by a string of letters and signs which in most of the cases corresponds to the so-called dictionary form of the word, or, to put it differently, to the word-form under which the word usually figures in dictionaries.
1. Environments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part of speech</th>
<th>Morphological categories of the word-form in the attribute lemma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>Nominative, singular, no negation (unless there is a positive form and negation does not change the lexical meaning; pluralia tantum: the same, but in plural)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>Masculinum animate, nominative, singular, no negation, 1st degree of comparison (positive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun</td>
<td>If there are such categories: Nominative, singular, masculine animate, no negation; (particularly: personal pronouns only já, ty, on (I, you, he))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numeral</td>
<td>If there are such categories: Nominative, singular, masculine animate, no negation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>Infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>1st degree, no negation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preposition</td>
<td>no vocalisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The rest</td>
<td>the original form</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Orthographic variants are to be unified (if, of course, they represent just genuine orthographic variants and not, e.g., a shift in meaning; this concerns the category “rest” as well).

The identification string obtained in this way can be completed by additional distinguishing identification(s) which consist of a hyphen and one or more decimal numbers (e.g., –2). Isolated zero is not used. This identification serves for distinguishing grammatical forms belonging to different lexical units (e.g., the noun hňát–2 versus the verb hňát–1, –2 standing for shank, –1 for verb drive, pursue; cf. English bear N and bear V). In exceptional cases such means can be used for distinguishing the meanings of a full homonym: e.g., strana–4 (=page) vs. strana–2 (=polit. party).

Upper- and lowercase letters play their part in distinguishing lexical units; they are used to distinguish common names from proper names otherwise identical (e.g., trnka vs. Trnka – black-thorn and Trnka, professor). The original “size” of the letters as they have been found in the text (attributes form or origf) is disregarded, i.e., if a (common) word was originally written with an uppercase letter in initial position (titles, beginning of a sentence), it is contained in the attribute lemma in lowercase letters only.
The morphological marker consists in a sequence of uppercase and lowercase letters of the English alphabet (and some other allowed symbols) and of digits. There are 15 positions in the tag (13 of them actually used) for the morphological category values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pos.</th>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Czech Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>POS</td>
<td>Part of Speech</td>
<td>Slovní druh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>SUBPOS</td>
<td>Detailed Part of Speech</td>
<td>Slovní poddruh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>GENDER</td>
<td>Agreement Gender</td>
<td>Rod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>NUMBER</td>
<td>Agreement Number</td>
<td>Číslo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>CASE</td>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Pád</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>POSSGENDER</td>
<td>Possessor’s Gender</td>
<td>Rod vlastníka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>POSSNUMBER</td>
<td>Possessor’s Number</td>
<td>Číslo vlastníka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>PERSON</td>
<td>Person</td>
<td>Osoba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>TENSE</td>
<td>Tense</td>
<td>Čas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>GRADE</td>
<td>Degree of Comparison</td>
<td>Stupeň</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>NEGATION</td>
<td>Negation (by prefix)</td>
<td>Negace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>VOICE</td>
<td>Voice</td>
<td>Slovesný rod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>RESERVE1</td>
<td>Reserved for future use</td>
<td>Rezerva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>RESERVE2</td>
<td>Reserved for future use</td>
<td>Rezerva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>VAR</td>
<td>Variant, Style, Register</td>
<td>Varianta, styl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Distinguishing part-of-speech category according to the first letter of the tag:
1. Environments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st letter of the tag</th>
<th>part-of-speech</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>numeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>preposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>conjunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>interjection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td>punctuation, numeral figures, root of the tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>(unknown, unidentified)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For sentence boundaries the tag Z#--------- is assigned, while for punctuation it is Z:---------; however, the sentence boundary is not used explicitly at the morphological level.

1.2.2. Analytical level

At present the analytical level represents the main level for structural annotation. Here linear annotation is abandoned, where each word was taken separately irrespective of context, and it is the structure of the sentence that is introduced into the annotation of the text (however, not the structure of the text). All the original words of the text are preserved and obtain their functions in the resulting structure.

By “structure” a tree is understood (a directed acyclic graph having one root) whose nodes are marked with attributes (Note: the word “attribute” is used here in its mathematical, rather than linguistic meaning - see 3.1. List of analytical functions.)

Every node has 12 attributes at present. The edges (arcs) of the tree represent relations of dependency between lexical units, or, as the case may be, relations of some other type (according to the values of the attributes). The basic objective of the annotation is to render correctly the structure of the sentence and to denote the type of dependency. A type of dependency represents one of the attributes of each node and is, understandably, oriented “upwards”, i.e., towards its “governing” node.
1. Environments

A detailed description of the analytical level is contained in Chapter 2., *Principles of Annotation* and Chapter 3., *Rules of annotation*. The volume of data to be attained is the same as at the morphological level, i.e., 1 million words, using the same texts.

1.2.3. Tectogrammatical level

The tectogrammatical level is the highest (‘underlying’) level of annotation. It has been characterized in the publications on the Functional Generative Description. A tectogrammatical sentence representation prototypically has the same structure as the analytical representation; however, in specific cases some nodes may be eliminated, some added, so that the tectogrammatical structure of a sentence can differ from that at the analytical level. From the technical point of view the tectogrammatical level is being specified elsewhere and the work at “manual” annotation is supposed to be continued.

No volume objective has been set as an aim here. The first experimental sample is supposed to be compiled of a size of about 1000 sentences.
Chapter 2. Principles of Annotation

By “principles” basic points of departure for annotation at the analytical level are meant.

2.1. Formal structure

The representation of the structure of a sentence is rendered in the form of a tree - a connected acyclic directed graph in which no more than one edge leads into a node, and whose nodes are labeled with complex symbols (sets of attributes). The edges are not labeled (in the technical sense - see Note with the attribute afun in 2.2. Attributes of a node).

2.2. Attributes of a node

There are twelve attributes of a node at present.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lemma</td>
<td>lemma (see 1.2.1.2. Lemma (lemma, SGML attribute &lt;l&gt;))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tag</td>
<td>morphological category, tag (see 1.2.1.3. Morphological marker (attribute tag, SGML attribute &lt;t&gt;))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form</td>
<td>word-form after contingent adjustments (see 1.2.1.1. Word-form (attribute form, SGML attribute &lt;f&gt;))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afun</td>
<td>analytical function, or, to put it differently, type of relation to immediately governing node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lemid</td>
<td>further/closer identification of lemma (esp. for lemmas which consist of more words)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mstag</td>
<td>morphological-syntactic tag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>origf</td>
<td>original form of the word (see 1.2.1.1. Word-form (attribute form, SGML attribute &lt;f&gt;))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>origap</td>
<td>formatting info preceding original word-form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gap1</td>
<td>formatting info preceding the word-form, part 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gap2</td>
<td>formatting info preceding the word-form, part 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gap3</td>
<td>formatting info preceding the word-form, part 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ord</td>
<td>serial number of the form in the sentence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. Principles of Annotation

From the point of view of manual annotation at analytical level only the attribute \texttt{afun} is essential, which is inserted in most of the cases manually. Attribute \texttt{form} represents the form of the word which figured as input in the morphological analysis and which almost always corresponds to the original form of the word in the text (for exceptions see 1.2.1.1. Word-form (attribute \texttt{form}, SGML attribute <f>). The attributes \texttt{tag} and \texttt{lemma} may contain values still undistinguished; this may happen in cases in which the manual annotation at morphological level failed to be carried out so far. In future the attribute \texttt{lemid} will be used to identify lexical units which consist of more words, or, as the case may be, to distinguish lexical units which behave in the same manner as far as morphology is concerned, but in a different way as regards syntax. The attribute \texttt{mstag} will be used as intermediate stage between morphological information (\texttt{tag}) and the so-called grammatemes at tectogrammatical level. It will, e.g., contain verbal tense, which cannot be stated at the morphological level (in full) - e.g., past tense.

The rest of the attributes is purely technical (\texttt{origf}, \texttt{origap}, \texttt{gap1}, \texttt{gap2}, \texttt{gap3}, \texttt{ord}). (In the programme \texttt{GRAPH} the value of the attribute \texttt{origf} appears at the lower margin of the screen.)

The attribute \texttt{afun}, which is the most important one from the point of view of the analytical level, does not relate directly to the node concerned, it belongs to the edge leading from the given node towards its governing (head) node. Only for technical reasons (since the necessity of assigning attributes to edges has been discarded) it is assigned to the subordinate node. In annotating, however, it is very useful to be aware of this fact since it helps to a better understanding of connections between some rules of annotation (e.g., thus the “meaningless” position of the function \texttt{Pred}, the special position of coordination and apposition, or the way of marking off a parenthesis become more clear and understandable).

2.3. Relation to the morphological level

A tree representing a sentence contains all word-forms of the sentence including symbols of punctuation. Besides it contains only the root, whose attributes can take on the following values:
2. Principles of Annotation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute name</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lemma</td>
<td>#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tag</td>
<td>ZSB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>form</td>
<td>#&lt;serial number of the sentence in the framework of the file given in mstag&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afun</td>
<td>AuxS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lemid</td>
<td>&lt;identification of the sentence in the framework of ČNK&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mstag</td>
<td>&lt;identification of the file for manual annotation at analytical level&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>origf</td>
<td>#&lt;serial number of the sentence in the file given in mstag&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>origap</td>
<td>space for annotator’s notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gap1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gap2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gap3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ord</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The number of nodes of a sentence tree equals the number of word-forms at the morphological level (including punctuation marks) plus one. In manual annotation no node is allowed to be cancelled or added.
Chapter 3. Rules of annotation

In the following text under ‘assignment’ or ‘function’ always the value of the attribute \texttt{afun} is meant. Such formulations as “to suspend node $x$ under node $y$” or “node $x$ depends on node $y$” mean that node $y$ is the governing node of node $x$. In graphic representation a governing node stands always higher than a dependent node. (For the definition of the graph of sentence representation see 1.2.2. Analytical level)

The rules for annotation at analytical level deal with sentence structure only (i.e., with determining which word depends on which) and with identifying the types of dependency (in terms of analytic functions). The structure of the sentence is captured directly in the graph of the sentence, the analytical function being represented as the value of the attribute \texttt{afun}. The other attributes serve as information for the annotator only - their values either have already been fixed or are to be determined in another way. Annotators are allowed to insert in addition to the values of the attribute \texttt{afun} just notes into the values of the attributes agreed upon (\texttt{origap} for the whole sentence, \texttt{mstag} for individual nodes). Owing to technical reasons also such edges can be found in the graphic representation that do not correspond to the traditional concept of grammatical dependency (e.g., coordination, apposition, “distant” dependency if an ellipsis occurs in the sentence, compound (improper) prepositions and conjunctions, etc.). For the sake of simplicity even for these edges such terms as “depends”, “is susended, hangs”, etc. will be used. Where confusion is impending, it will be explicitly stated whether grammatical or “technical” dependency is the case.

For manual annotation the input data are preprocessed with the aid of programmes, which impress an initial structure on the sentence annotated at the morphological level and convert it to the format required by the programme for manual annotation (GRAPH). The initial structure is trivial - each word is regarded as dependent on the word immediately preceding. The only exception represent punctuation marks at the end of the sentence, which will depend on the root of the tree. In the course of this initialisation even such functions are preliminarily assigned with which there is high probability that their automatic assignation is correct. The attribute \texttt{afun} with other nodes obtains value ???, so that in using the programme GRAPH the still unprocessed nodes can be identified at first sight.

\textbf{The annotation proceeds in the following way:}

1. The root of the tree is formed by an added node marked with # (see 3.2.8.1. The root of the tree \texttt{AuxS}).
2. In a prototypically structured sentence, the predicate of the sentence depends on the root together with a node labelled in accordance with the final punctuation mark. If the sentence has no predicate, the “remaining” sentence parts may be suspended here side by side (see point 4); in a compound sentence the main node for coordination depends on the root (see point 5).
3. Rules of annotation

3. We comply with the principles of dependency analysis:

- we look up the predicate of the sentence (which will be suspended according to point 2, see 3.2.1. Predicate Pred, Pnom, AuxV),
- we find the subject of the sentence (in our conception it depends on the predicate, see 3.2.2. Subject Sb),
- we find all other verbal complements (Obj, Adv, or Atv, AtvV),
- we determine the modifying elements of verbal complements (Atr, Obj, Adv, Atv, AtvV). However, also all other (remaining) nodes must be dependent (sometimes only in a purely technical way), see 3.2.7. Auxiliary sentence members AuxC, AuxP, AuxZ, AuxO, AuxT, AuxR and AuxY and 3.2.8. Graphic symbols (punctuation); the root of the tree AuxS, AuxK, AuxX, AuxG).

4. If there is an ellipsis and if an element lacks its governing node, we use a special marker ExD (3.3.1. Ellipsis ExD, ExD_Co). Essentially, also a one-member non-verbal sentence is regarded as an ellipsis (3.3.2. One-member sentences without a verb ExD, ExD_Co).

5. The problems of coordination and apposition (Coord, <afun>_Co and Apos, <afun>_Ap) are solved technically by choosing the so-called main node (a conjunction, a comma etc.) that depends on a higher node; individual members of coordination or apposition constructions then ‘depend’ on this node (technically).

6. Parenthetical parts of sentences are denoted by a special affix (3.5. Parenthesis).

All rules and functions are described in detail in the corresponding special sections. Moreover, in the section 3.6. Complex phenomena solutions of some more complex phenomena are described, which could not be included in the above sections.

The rules have been designed and formulated so as to cover as many language phenomena as possible. Owing to the character of natural languages, of course, it has been impossible to capture everything. Therefore, also utterances not corresponding to structures described in our rules occur in the corpus. In such exceptional cases the decisions have been left up to the annotators’ language feeling to let the annotators decide individually.

The rules for annotation at the analytical level (or the description of the sentence representation at analytical level and its relation to the morphological level) are based above all on the principles of annotation (Chapter 2., Principles of Annotation), on the demand for consistency, the need to explicitly capture the relations between all occurrences of word-forms in the sentence, and in view of the assumed representation of the sentence at the tectogrammatical level. Wherever possible they observe traditional conceptions of Czech grammar as it is described especially in V. Šmilauer’s book ‘Novočeská skladba’ (Modern Czech Syntax). It should be pointed out that relatively frequent differences can be met owing to the
3. Rules of annotation

“non-computational” orientation of the handbook in question, where a number of quite common phenomena fail to be explicitly, systematically and sometimes even consistently described. We also differ from the handbook in understanding the subject as depending on the predicate (see the part 2.1.2.2. Modifying predicate and the part 3.2.2.2. Definition of subject).

To give an example of the complications: the predicate often consists of more words and we have to intercept each of them separately. Therefore, in addition to the function $\text{Pred}$ for the main node of the predicate we also use the symbols $\text{AuxV}$ for the auxiliary verb to be (see 3.2.1.3. Compound verb forms) and $\text{Pnom}$ for the nominal part of the predicate (see 2.1.6.1. the structure of verbal-nominal predicate).

If a predicate is connected with an infinitive, we label the latter as $\text{Obj}$, which otherwise denotes classical object (see 2.1.5.1. The structure of the compound verbal predicate). The afun $\text{Atr}$ is used not only for classical attribute, but also for certain elements of compound addresses and names (see 3.6.2. Addresses and names of persons and institutions), for items in foreign language texts (see 3.6.10. Foreign words in the text) and for the elements of numerical expressions (which are difficult to represent anyway since various further problems get involved, see 3.6.3. Expression with numerals, figures in different functions). In addition, we also introduce the so-called combined functions (see 3.2.3.3. Combined functions).

As compared with Šmilauer’s conception, we also define in a slightly different way the border lines between individual sentence parts, particularly of the object (see 3.2.4.2. Definition of $\text{Obj}$), adverbial (see 3.2.5.2. Specification of adverbials) and complement (see 3.2.6.2. Definition of complement).

With some examples which illustrate individual rules, graphs representing parts of sentences roughly in the shape in which they are rendered in the annotation by programme GRAPH are used. In this way the values of the attributes $\text{form}$ (the upper text with a node) and $\text{afun}$ (the lower part of the text, below the value of the attribute $\text{form}$) are represented.
### 3. Rules of annotation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>afun</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pred</td>
<td>Predicate, a node not depending on another node; depends on #</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sb</td>
<td>Subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obj</td>
<td>Object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adv</td>
<td>Adverbial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atv</td>
<td>Complement (so-called determining) technically hung on a non-verb. element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AtvV</td>
<td>Complement (so-called determining) hung on a verb, no 2(^{nd}) gov. node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atr</td>
<td>Attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pnom</td>
<td>Nominal predicate, or nom. part of predicate with copula be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuxV</td>
<td>Auxiliary vb. be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coord</td>
<td>Coord. node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apos</td>
<td>Apposition (main node)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuxT</td>
<td>Reflex. tantum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuxR</td>
<td>Ref., neither Obj nor AuxT, Pass. refl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuxP</td>
<td>Primary prepos., parts of a secondary p.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuxC</td>
<td>Conjunction (subord.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuxO</td>
<td>Redundant or emotional item, ’coreferential’ pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuxZ</td>
<td>Emphasizing word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuxX</td>
<td>Comma (not serving as a coordinating conj.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuxG</td>
<td>Other graphic symbols, not terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuxY</td>
<td>Adverbs, particles not classed elsewhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuxS</td>
<td>Root of the tree (#)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuxK</td>
<td>Terminal punctuation of a sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExD</td>
<td>A technical value for a deleted item; also for the main element of a sentence without predicate (Externally-Dependent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AtrAtr</td>
<td>An attribute of any of several preceding (syntactic) nouns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AtrAdv</td>
<td>Structural ambiguity between adverbial and adnominal (hung on a name/noun) dependency without a semantic difference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AdvAtr</td>
<td>Dtto with reverse preference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AtrObj</td>
<td>Structural ambiguity between object and adnominal dependency without a semantic difference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ObjAtr</td>
<td>Dtto with reverse preference</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. Rules of annotation

3.2. A simple sentence (clause) containing a verb; parts of sentence in a dependency relation

3.2.1. Predicate $\text{Pred}$, $\text{Pnom}$, $\text{AuxV}$

3.2.1.1. INFO PRED

In this section our conception of predicate will be described. In its representation mainly three functions are used - $\text{Pred}$, $\text{Pnom}$ and $\text{AuxV}$. We shall start by the general part 3.2.1.2. Delimitation of the predicate, which falls into two subdivisions. In the first (2.1.2.1. Dependency of the predicate) the reader will be instructed how and where the predicate of the main, and that of the dependent clause, are to be suspended, and in the second (2.1.2.2. Modifying predicate) it is specified what are the possible dependents of the predicate. The subsequent part (3.2.1.3. Compound verb forms) is devoted to the function $\text{AuxV}$, used to represent compound verbal forms containing the verb to be.

According to some conceptions there are four kinds of predicates. They are described in the following four divisions. In the division 3.2.1.4. Simple verbal predicate a simple verbal predicate which consists of one word can be found. Compound verbal predicate consists of more words and involves either marked modality or the phases of an event. The part 3.2.1.5. Compound verbal predicate devoted to it consists of three subdivisions. In 2.1.5.1. The structure of the compound verbal predicate its inner structure is dealt with, in 2.1.5.2. Modification of a compound predicate it is its modification, and in 2.1.5.3. Problem of subject and object with compound predicate a minor problem is pointed out concerning its subject or object. The verbal-nominal predicate follows in the subdivision 3.2.1.6. verbal nominal predicate. In the first subdivision, 2.1.6.1. the structure of verbal-nominal predicate we again deal with its structure and we introduce the afun value $\text{Pnom}$, by which the nominal part of this type of a predicate is denoted. This can be expressed in several ways: nominative of a noun (2.1.6.2. Representation of $\text{Pnom}$ by agreeing noun in nominative), genitive of a noun 2.1.6.4. Representation of $\text{Pnom}$ by incongruent genitive noun), a compound adjective (2.1.6.5. Representation of $\text{Pnom}$ by a compound form of adjective), a nominal adjective (2.1.6.6. Representation of $\text{Pnom}$ by a nominal form of adjective), infinitive (2.1.6.7. Representation of $\text{Pnom}$ by an infinitive), possessive pronoun (2.1.6.8. Representation of $\text{Pnom}$ by a possessive pronoun), numerical expression (2.1.6.9. Representation of $\text{Pnom}$ by a numerical expression) and a subordinate clause (2.1.6.10. Representation of $\text{Pnom}$ by a subordinate sentence). What fails to be included in this list and what appears to be similar to a possible expression of a nominal part of the predicate, is usually an adverbial ($\text{Adv}$). This fact is mentioned in 2.1.6.11. Possible mistaking of $\text{Pnom}$ for $\text{Adv}$. 

15
Further on, in the subdivision 2.1.6.12. Modification of verbal-nominal predicate the modification of the verbal nominal predicate is discussed. The last type of a predicate is the purely nominal predicate, which we, as a matter of fact, do not regard as a predicate, see the part 3.2.1.7. Predicate purely nominal in two-member sentences.

The last part of this section, called 3.2.1.8. Distinguishing state and passive is devoted to distinguishing ‘state’ from passive. The state exhibits the structure of the verbal-nominal predicate, while the passive is a verbal predicate with the auxiliary be.

3.2.1.2. Delimitation of the predicate

The Predicate represents a basic sentence part, i.e., by means of which some property, state, change or activity is attributed to the subject.

2.1.2.1. Dependency of the predicate

The predicate is the head (governing word) of its clause. The predicate of the main clause represents the root of the tree for the sentence, however, technically it is suspended under the initial symbol of the tree (labelled #) and it obtains afun \text{Pred}. In subordinate clauses it is not denoted as \text{Pred} but by a corresponding function of the subordinate clause (see the examples (2), (3), (4) below).

With subordinate clauses introduced by a reflexive pronoun (který which, kdo who, ...) or pronominal adverb (kde where, kdy when, ...), their predicates get suspended directly under the node governing the whole subordinate clause, while the introducing element depends on a the part of the subordinate clause (exx. (2), (3)). If a subordinate attributive clause is introduced by a conjunction, this conjunction gets suspended under the governing item and the subordinate predicate depends on the conjunction (if need be, cf. 3.2.7.1. Subordinating conjunctions \text{AuxC}).

All this holds to the last bit if coordination of more main or subordinate clauses is not the case. As regards coordination, the rules contained in 3.4.1. Coordination (sentential, of sentence parts) \text{Coord}, <afun> _\text{Co} must be applied in addition.

The predicates described below are emphasized.

Note

In the examples (of parts) of analytical tree structures, the nodes are labelled by Czech lemmas and analytical functions (afuns); for each tree we present (the part of) the Czech sentence the structure of which it represents, accompanied by English glosses; in case the glosses would not give sufficient information about the phenomenon under discussion, we add a literal or full English translation of the Czech sentence.
3. Rules of annotation

1. Kominík vymetá komíny.
   Chimneysweep sweeps chimneys.

2. nevěděl, kdy usne
   did-not-know when falls-asleep

3. nevěděl, který nadešel den
   did-not-know which came day

4. nevěděl, že dovymetal
   did-not-know that he-had-finished-sweeping
3. Rules of annotation

2.1.2.2. Modifying predicate

A predicate can have inner (obligatory) and free complements (dependents). They are classified as an object, an adverbial and a complement. Also the so-called sunken parentheses (not separated by commas - 3.2.7.7. Parts of multi-word constructions, some particles, decayed parenthesis $\text{AuxY}$) and sometimes even emphasizing particles (3.2.7.3. Emphasizing words $\text{AuxZ}$) can be hung on the predicate. For technical reasons even a whole range of further parts of the sentence can be represented as ‘dependent’ on the predicate.

If a subject is contained in the clause it depends on the predicate, cf. the following example:

```
otec spí
father sleeps
```

In sentences in which subject is not expressed, Czech being a pro-drop language (e.g. Pújdeme na pivo Shall go out for a beer), we do not complete the subject into the clause, as distinct from what is usual in traditional grammars. This follows from the postulate in 2.3. Relation to the morphological level, according to which no nodes may be added or taken out of a tree structure. Thus, from the point of view of their outward look, they have the same structure as one-member verbal sentences which have no subject (e.g. Venku prší, lit. Outside is raining). The main element of a one-member verbal sentence is constituted by the predicate and it is assigned a fun $\text{Pred}$ in the main clause, or the corresponding function of a subordinate clause in the subordinate clause.
3. Rules of annotation

3.2.1.3. Compound verb forms

The verbal part of a predicate (without modal verbs) can be expressed by a simple or a compound form; the latter form (past or future tense, conditional, passive etc.) contains one or more forms of the auxiliary verb být to be.

The term “compound verb form” must be distinguished from “compound verbal predicate” (the part 3.2.1.5. Compound verbal predicate), with which the whole predicate is composed of a modal or phase verb and a verb form of the finite verb. All auxiliary verbs with a compound (analytical) verb form will be denoted afun $\text{AuxV}$ and suspended under the “lexical” part of the verb form. To distinguish passive (with $\text{AuxV}$) from verbal nominal predicate see the part 3.2.1.8. Distinguishing state and passive.

1. Karel by byl sedával na své židli
Karel would-be-Past used-to-sit on his chair
*Charles would have used to sit in his chair.*
3. Rules of annotation

3.2.1.4. Simple verbal predicate

A predicate is usually represented by a finite verb form, either 'lexical' (ex. (1)), or 
byt to be as a 'substitute' (ex. (2)), or as the verb of existence ((3), (4)). In connection 
with the forms of byt, note the parts 3.2.1.3. Compound verb forms (compound verbal 
forms) and 3.2.1.8. Distinguishing state and passive (distinguishing between a 'state’ 
and the passive).

The predicate can also be represented by a word which becomes a syntactic verb. In 
the example (5) this is an interjection.

Also the words lze can and nelze cannot are regarded as syntactic verbs (ex. (7)).

Examples (the simple verbal predicate with afun Pred is emphasized):

1. 

matka plače
mother weeps

2. 

byl v nemocnici
he-was in hospital
3. Rules of annotation

3. Jsou lidé, kteří nevěří
   are people who do-not-believe
   There are people who do not believe

4. Budiž světlo!
   let-be light
   Let it be light!

5. Hajdy domů!
   Hurrah home!
   Hurrah for home!
3. Rules of annotation

6. člověk se po těch schodech utento
one refl. on those stairs gets-done
One gets done (in) on those stairs.

7. Lze se podívat
one-can refl. look
One can have a look.

3.2.1.5. Compound verbal predicate

2.1.5.1. The structure of the compound verbal predicate

The compound predicate (composed of the infinitive of a finite verb and of a finite form of a modal or phase verb) is regarded as a connection of \( \text{Pred} \) and its \( \text{Obj} \) (infinitive).

The infinitive does not represent a classical object, the concept of afun \( \text{Obj} \) being a little wider here. Accordingly, this function never passes into afun \( \text{Sb} \) as can be the case with classical objects, e.g., with passivisation. The infinitive in compound predicates represents \( \text{Obj} \) under any circumstances.
3. Rules of annotation

With modal verbs (except for dá se can be) the particle se can never get afun AuxT; only in some cases it is assigned afun AuxR.

The part denoted Pred is emphasized type.

```
1.
    AuxS
    |   mělo
    |   Pred
    |   pršetK
    Včera  Adv
    |   Obj

Včera mělo pršet
yesterday it-should rain
It should have rained yesterday
```

```
2.
    AuxS
    |   musela
    |   Pred
    |   přijítK
    Rána  Sb
    |   Obj

Rána musela přijít
blow should come
The blow had to come
```

### 2.1.5.2. Modification of a compound predicate

Essentially, there are two possibilities where to suspend the node that modifies a compound predicate - under the node with afun Pred (finite verb) or under the node with afun Obj (infinitive). The rules which decide are as follows (analogous with the rules for modifying verbal nominal predicate - the part 2.1.6.12. Modification of verbal-nominal predicate below).

The subject always depends on the node with afun Pred (ex. (1), (2)). All valency modifications (i.e., both objects and obligatory adverbials) depend on the verb having such valency, i.e., on the infinitive (ex. (3), (4), (5)). As regards the remaining adverbials, they are suspended according to intuition. If we feel clear dependence (semantic appropriateness) of a free modification on an infinitive, we suspend it in this way. E.g., the adverbial complementation for apples in a clause you may come for apples belongs to the infinitive. On the other hand, the complementation due to
3. Rules of annotation

*illness* in a clause *he could not come due to illness* belongs to the finite verb. In case no clear dependence is felt (usually with local, time and broad respect determinations) we suspend them under the finite verb (ex. (6), (7)). The adverbial determinations dependent on $\mathbf{Pred}$ relate through $\mathbf{Pred}$ to the whole compound predicate.

Also the infinitive of the copula *být* *to be* can depend on the modal finite verb, with $\mathbf{Pnom}$ depending on the copula (e.g. *může to být pro obchodníky nepřijatelné* this may be unacceptable for businessmen; *omluva nemůž být závazkem an apology need not be an obligation*). There are then three options as for the position of an Adv - modal verb, copula and $\mathbf{Pnom}$; we comply to rules of a whole and of clear dependence; lists of respective valency frames will be used.

**Examples:**

1. Franta nechtěl upadnout
   Franta did-not-want to-fall

2. Mohlo by se zdát, že odpoví
   It-could be-Cond. Refl. appear that he-would-reply
3. Rules of annotation

3. školy chtějí přilákat studenty
   schools want to-allure students

4. nemohla poznat, kdo to byl
   she-could-not recognize who that was

5. chtěl se chovat slušně
   he-wanted Refl. to-behave well
3. Rules of annotation

6. stát nemůže ve světě dělat ostudu
state may-not in world cause scandal

7. nemůže přijít štěstí, kam nevešla láská
cannot come happiness where has-not-come love
No happiness can come where love failed to arrive

2.1.5.3. Problem of subject and object with compound predicate

In what follows, five examples of representation of compound predicate are presented. As has been pointed out above, the infinitive with a modal verb always is handled as its Obj. In the first example the infinitive belongs to a verb not having an object participant, which fact makes the situation simple and clear.

The subsequent two examples differ in their structure. If to an infinitive of a verb having an object participant (as here) such a particular object in the proper form is found (here the accusative pravdu truth), it depends on this infinitive as an Obj. Should, however, such an element fulfilling semantically the function of an (underlying) object, as is the case with the nominative form (pravda) in a reflexive clause, it becomes the subject of the whole clause (Sb).
This also holds in the case in which Nominative and Accusative are expressed by an ambiguous form. Such cases are illustrated by the last two examples.

1. 

\[
\text{může se diskutovat}
\]

\[\text{it-can Refl. to-discuss} \]

\[\text{it can be discussed}\]

2. 

\[
\text{pravdu se může chápat různě}
\]

\[\text{truth-Acc Refl. it-can understand differently} \]

\[\text{one can understand truth in different ways}\]

3. 

\[
\text{pravda se může chápat různě}
\]

\[\text{truth-Nom Refl. can understand differently} \]

\[\text{truth can be understood in different ways}\]

4. 

\[
\text{pivo se může vypít různě}
\]

\[\text{beer-Acc/Nom Refl. can drink differently} \]

\[\text{beer can be drunk in different ways}\]
3. Rules of annotation

5. 

dá se vytušit, jak litují  
*it-can Refl. imagine how they-regret  
*it can be imagined how they regret*

3.2.1.6. verbal nominal predicate

2.1.6.1. the structure of verbal-nominal predicate

The verbal-nominal predicate consists of a verbal (copula in finite form) and a nominal (adjective, noun, ...) part. The copula gets a function $P_{\text{pred}}$. The nominal part of the predicate obtains the function $P_{\text{nom}}$ and depends on the copula.

In our approach, only the verb *být to be* is regarded as copula, although in current grammars also such verbs as *become* etc. can be handled in this way.

Examples:

1. 

Pivo je zdravé  
*beer is healthy*

2. 

Tonda byl skvělý člověk  
*Tony was excellent man*
In the part 3.2.6.4. Misinterpretation of complement the problem of commutability (formal similarity) of the nominal part of predicate and complement is discussed.

If copula is absent in the sentence (elided), the procedure remains the same as is usual with ellipses (see 3.3.1. Ellipsis ExD, ExD_Co) and all the nodes which would depend on the absent copula (i.e., including the nominal part) obtain afun ExD (see also 3.2.1.7. Predicate purely nominal in two-member sentences).

However, there are exceptions to this rule, concerning words like třeba necessary, nutno urgent, možno possible, záhodno advisable and their negative forms. Such words obtain afun Pred and take thus the function of the whole predicate in the tree. The part 3.1.4.1. Ellipsis of copula with some verbo-nominal predicates is devoted to this phenomenon.

\[ za\ hodinu\ možno\ házet\ kamením\]

in an-hour allowed to-throw stones

\emph{throwing stones allowed in an hour}

\subsection*{2.1.6.2. Representation of Pnom by agreeing noun in nominative}

If the nominal part of the predicate is expressed by a noun in nominative (in which, as a rule, also subject is expressed) and if we are in doubt to which noun in the sentence \textit{Pnom} and to which \textit{Sb} is to be assigned, we can find help in that we try to use one of them in instrumental. The noun which can be transformed in this way (\textit{diamant je drahokamem the diamond is a precious stone}) in the sentence obtains the function \textit{Pnom}.

1. \[ je\ ??\]

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{c c c c c}
\text{diamant} & \text{je} & \text{drahokam}\ \\
\text{Sb} & \text{Pnom}
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\text{diamant je drahokam}

diamond is \textit{precious-stone}
3. Rules of annotation

2. jídlo je životní úkon
eating is life function

3. on je marnivec
he is vain-man

4. to je otec
this is father

2.1.6.3. Representation of Pnom by an agreeing noun in instrumental

Pnom printed emphasised.

1. já budu učitelem
   I shall-be teacher

2. to je tragedií tohoto národa
   this is tragedy this-Gen nation-Gen
   this is the tragedy of this people
3. Rules of annotation

2.1.6.4. Representation of Pnom by incongruent genitive noun

This manner of expression is rare. Anyway, it is necessary to find out whether some Adv is not the case (e.g., in such sentences as bylo to roku 1921 (it happened in the year 1921), which is a time adverbial, 3.2.5. Adverbials (and borderline cases)). Pnom is emphasized:

1. čepice je souseda
cap is neighbour’s

2. Franta je vysokého vzrůstu
Frank is high stature-Gen
Frank is of high stature

3. je dobré mysli
he is good mind-Gen
he is of good cheer

2.1.6.5. Representation of Pnom by a compound form of adjective

Pnom is emphasized

1. Lukáš je zdravý
Lucas is well

2. jeho styl je básnický
his style is poetic
2.1.6.6. Representation of $P_{nom}$ by a nominal form of adjective

$P_{nom}$ is emphasized

1. je velmi laskav
   he-is very kind

2. pacient je sláb
   patient is weak

3. bude na světě sám
   he-will-be in world alone
   he will be alone in the world

If $P_{nom}$ is verbal, it is not always easy to distinguish passive from state, a problem dealt with in the part 3.2.1.8. Distinguishing state and passive. Neuter “short” adjective forms (platno of use, jasno clear, zřejmo obvious) obtain afun $P_{nom}$, provided a pronominal form of dative can be inserted into the sentence. If this is not possible, a fun Adv must be assigned. This difference is illustrated by the following examples:

1. je (mu) zřejmo ($P_{nom}$)
   it-is (he-Dat) obvious
   it is obvious (to him)

2. je (jí) těžko ($P_{nom}$)
   it-is (she-Dat) hard
   it is hard (for her)

3. je (mi) nesnadno přijít ($P_{nom}$)
   it-is (I-Dat) difficult to-come
   it is difficult (for me) to come
3. Rules of annotation

4. but:
   
   dnes je slunečno (Adv)
   today it-is sunny
   it is sunny today

2.1.6.7. Representation of Pnom by an infinitive

In the part 2.1.6.12. Modification of verbal-nominal predicate (modification of verbal-nominal predicate) below, it is pointed out that e.g. the word Sněžka (name of a mountain) depends on the copula je is as its subject, while in the accusative form it is an object depending on the infinitive.

1.  

   je vidět Sněžka
   it-is to-see Sněžka-Nom
   Sněžka can be seen

2.  

   je vidět Sněžku
   it-is to-see Sněžka-Acc
   it is possible to see Sněžka

3. je cítit síra
   it-is to-smell sulphur-Nom
   sulphur can be smelled
3. Rules of annotation

4. je čítit síru
   it-is to-smell sulphur-Acc
   it is possible to smell sulphur

2.1.6.8. Representation of \(P_{\text{nom}}\) by a possesive pronoun

\(P_{\text{nom}}\) is emphasized

1. dárek byl jejich
   gift was theirs

2. šátek je matčin
   scarf is mother’s

2.1.6.9. Representation of \(P_{\text{nom}}\) by a numerical expression

\(P_{\text{nom}}\) is emphasized

1. to je moc
   it is much
   this is too much

2. věk byl 14
   age was 14

It holds that a numerical expression obtains the function \(P_{\text{nom}}\) only if there is another subject in the sentence. If this is not so, the numerical expression takes over the role of the subject and it can be modified by an attribute (with this problem also the part 6.3.3. Genitive in the function of Sb, Obj and in the function of their Atr is concerned.)
3. Rules of annotation

1. je jich málo (Sb)
   it-is they-Gen few
   there are few of them

2. je nás pět (Sb)
   it-is we-Gen five
   there is five of us

2.1.6.10. Representation of Pnom by a subordinate sentence

Pnom is emphasized

jeho výklad je, že mají hrát
his interpretation is that they-ought to-play

2.1.6.11. Possible mistaking of Pnom for Adv

The non-verbal part of the predicate can only be expressed by the eight possibilities mentioned above. A prepositional case, adverbs and interjections are regarded as Adv.

Adv are emphasized
3. Rules of annotation

1. lidé jsou k smích
   people are to a-smile
   people are ridiculous

2. to je k popukání
   this is to split
   this is (enough) to (make you) split (your sides with laughter)

3. co to je za bláznovství
   what this is for foolishness
   what for a foolishness is this

4. už je na cestě
   already he-is on way
   he is on the way already

5. býval bez skrupuli
   he-used-to-be without scruples
   he used to be unscrupulous

6. to je jinak
   this is differently

7. děti jsou vzhůru
   children are awake

8. je pozdě litovat
   it-is late to-lament
   it is too late to lament
3. Rules of annotation

9. to je mi **fuk**
   it is I-Dat **nothing**
   I don’t care a damn

Constructions with *jako like* are not regarded as **Pnom**, either; they represent cases of comparison having the function of **Adv**; however, owing to ellipsis, often **ExD** is used. How to treat these constructions can be found in 3.6.9. Phrases of comparison with conjunctions *jako* (as), *než* (than).

**ExD** are emphasized

1. chlapec je jako **obrázek**
   boy is like **picture**
   the boy is as pretty as a picture

2. on je jako **opařený**
   he is like **dumbfounded**

2.1.6.12. Modification of verbal-nominal predicate

Modification of verbal-nominal predicate complies with rules analogous to those which modify compound predicate (part 2.1.5.2. Modification of a compound predicate). Subject always depends on the copula (ex. (1)). While in the example mentioned above *Sněžka* is Subject, in the example *je vidět Sněžku* (**it is possible to see Sněžka**) (ex. (2)) the word *Sněžka* is an object of *vidět* (**to see**).

The valency complements (**Obj** as well as obligatory **Adv**) depend on the element which has this valency (**Pnom**, as a rule - ex. (3)). Also free adverbials can depend on **Pnom**, if they tend towards it strongly owing to their meaning. If, however, we do not feel such tendencies (especially with local, time and wide respect determinations) we suspend them under the copula (ex. (4)).

**Note**

The decision is very complicated especially with the form *pro+Acc for*. If a noun in dative could be used at the same time, free **Adv** may prevail (*je pro názornost určen všem uživatelům for the sake of intuitiveness it is destined for all users*), with **Adv** dependent on copula; if *pro* competes with dative, it is rather **Obj**, dependent on **Pnom**.
3. Rules of annotation

1. je vidět Sněžka
   it-is to-see Sněžka-Nom
   *Sněžka can be seen*

2. je vidět Sněžku
   it-is to-see Sněžka-Acc
   *one can see Sněžka*

3. je spokojen s málem
   he-is satisfied with a-little
   *he can put up with very little*
3. Rules of annotation

4. summer-house is this-year extended by new premises

3.2.1.7. Predicate purely nominal in two-member sentences

The purely nominal predicate contains a non-verbal expression only, i.e. with a copula being elided. This can be solved using the function Exd (see 3.3.1. Ellipsis ExD, ExD_Co)

1. cloak-room opposite

2. youth joy

3. to-smoke forbidden

4. nothing doing
3. Rules of annotation

As has been pointed out in the part 2.1.6.1. the structure of verbal-nominal predicate, there are exceptions to this rule with such words as třeba necessary. Such words obtain a function \( \text{Pred} \), taking thus over the function of the whole predicate in the tree. In the section on ellipses the part 3.1.4.1. Ellipsis of copula with some verbo-nominal predicates is devoted to this phenomenon.

### 3.2.1.8. Distinguishing state and passive

In representing the collocation of \( \text{být to be} \) and a passive participle, it is necessary to distinguish action, i.e., a real passive form (ex. (1)), from state, i.e. a verbal-nominal predicate (ex. (2)).

1. \[
\begin{align*}
\text{Hrad} & \quad \text{byl} \quad \text{vystavěn} \\
\text{Sb} & \quad \text{AuxV} \quad \text{Pred} \quad \text{AuxK} \\
\text{castle} & \quad \text{was built-up} \\
\end{align*}
\]

If the event expressed by periphrastic passive is conceived as a state resulting from the action and the action meaning is subdued in it, it is difficult to distinguish between the two functions. The difference between an action in passive and an adjective with copula can be recognized from the context only. E.g., in the sentence \( \text{hrad byl tehdy už vystavěn the castle was already built up at that time} \), the meaning is that of a state, while in the sentence \( \text{hrad byl vystavěn za Karla IV. the castle was built up under Charles IV} \), action passive is the case.

2. \[
\begin{align*}
\text{Hrad} & \quad \text{byl} \quad \text{vystavěn} \\
\text{Sb} & \quad \text{AuxV} \quad \text{Pred} \quad \text{AuxK} \quad \text{Nom} \\
\text{castle} & \quad \text{was built-up} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Also the following facts can help. For the most part, the state is expressed by a perfective verb and the passive participle can be replaced by a compound adjective (in the sentence \( \text{úkol je v čase promyšleně rozložen the task has been ingeniously} \)
3. Rules of annotation

*distributed in time* rozložit distribute is a perfective verb, where the form rozložen can be replaced by the form rozložený, which is an adjective). On the other hand, the action passive is usually expressed by an imperfective verb, its transformation into reflexive passive is possible and it can be completed by an instrumental of the originator of the action (in the sentence obilí je koseno sedlákem corn is mowed by a harvester the originator of the action, harvester, is present, the verb is imperfective, and its form can be transformed into kosí se it gets mown).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Perfective verb</th>
<th>Possibility of a compound adjective</th>
<th>Possibility of reflexive passive</th>
<th>Presence of originator of action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.2.2. Subject Sb

#### 3.2.2.1. INFO SB

First, in the part 3.2.2. Definition of subject we shall explain what is subject (Sb) and define it.

The main contents of this section consist of the part 3.2.2.3. Expression of a subject, subdivided according to individual types of expression of a subject. Sb can be expressed by a noun in nominative (2.2.3.1. Subject expressed by a noun in nominative), an adjective (2.2.3.2. Subject expressed by an adjective), a pronoun (2.2.3.3. Subject expressed by a pronoun), a relative pronoun (2.2.3.4. Subject expressed by a relative pronoun), an inflexible word (2.2.3.5. Subject expressed by an inflexible word), a quotation (2.2.3.6. Subject expressed by a quotation), a genitive of negation (2.2.3.7. Subject expressed by genitive of negation), a partitive genitive (2.2.3.8. Subject expressed by partitive genitive), a genitive possessive by origin (2.2.3.9. Subject expressed by a genitive possessive by origin), a prepositional case (2.2.3.10. Subject expressed by a prepositional case), a numeral (2.2.3.11. Subject expressed by a numeral), an infinitive (2.2.3.12. Subject expressed by infinitive), a subordinate clause introduced by a relative pronoun (2.2.3.13. Subject expressed by a subordinate clause introduced by a relative pronoun), a subordinate clause introduced by a conjunction (2.2.3.14. Subject expressed by a subordinate clause introduced by a conjunction), a dative (2.2.3.15. Subject expressed by dative), a pronoun což (what) in a pseudo-relative clause (2.2.3.16. Subject expressed by the pronoun což (what, which) in a pseudo-relative clause), or it can be introduced by the conjunction než (than) (2.2.3.17. Subject introduced by the conjunction než (than, but)).
In conclusion, in the part 3.2.2.4. Possible confusion of subject and object, some attention is devoted to mutual substitution of functions \( S_b \) and \( O_b j \) in problematic constructions.

### 3.2.2. Definition of subject

Subject of a clause can be represented by practically any construction to which the question *who (what)* can be applied. A subject always depends on the predicate, which means that it technically depends on the node which bears afun \( P_r e d \) in the main sentence and the function of subordinate clause in such a construction (see the part 3.2.1.2. Delimitation of the predicate). If an apparent subject 'stands out' of the sentence (e.g., *Voda, to je základ mlékaření* - *Water, that's the basis of dairying*), its expression is regarded as a parenthesis (see 3.5.5. A syntactically non-incorporated sentence part or sentential form; ellipsis; an independent sentence part; vocative; interjection Exd\_Pa).

### 3.2.3. Expression of a subject

Subject is as a rule expressed by a noun or a pronoun in nominative, but it can also be expressed by any other part of speech.

#### 2.2.3.1. Subject expressed by a noun in nominative

The expression of \( S_b \) is *emphasized*:

\[ Tonda \quad nese \quad pivo \]

\[ Tony \quad brings \quad beer \]

#### 2.2.3.2. Subject expressed by an adjective

The expression concerned is *emphasized*:
3. Rules of annotation

1. jeho blízcí žijí
   his relatives live

2. i nejchytřejší může ztratit filipa
   even the-cleverest can lose brains

### 2.2.3.3. Subject expressed by a pronoun

The expression of Sb is emphasized (also in the examples below):

1. je to podobné
   is it similar
   it is similar

2. některí resignují sami, jiní odejdou s ostudou
   some resign themselves others leave with disgrace

3. nezměnilo se nic
   not-changed Refl., nothing
   nothing has changed

4. nastalo něco jako jeho pomalá smrt
   occurred something like his slow death

5. někdo se rád směje
   someone Refl. likes to-laugh
3. Rules of annotation

6. ta moje chodí pozdě
   the mine comes late

2.2.3.4. Subject expressed by a relative pronoun

člověk, který nejí zemře
man who not-eats dies

2.2.3.5. Subject expressed by an inflexible word

1. žádné napřesrok už nebude
   no next-year any-more will-not-be

2. jeho ano neznělo přesvědčivě
   his yes did-not-sound convincing
3. Rules of annotation

3. rozvážné pst zvládlo situaci
   sensible pst got-in-hand situation

2.2.3.6. Subject expressed by a quotation

1. v knize stálo : miluj
   in book was-written : love
   Love! was written in the book

2. v kinech se hrálo " Cikáni jdou do nebe "
   in movies Refl. played " gipsies go to heaven "
   "The gipsies are on their way to heaven" was on in the movies

3. na škole stálo napsáno : rychle uteč.
   on school was written : quickly run-away
   there was an inscription on the school: run away quick
3. Rules of annotation

### 2.2.3.7. Subject expressed by genitive of negation

1. 
   po ráně ani památky nezůstalo
   of wound any vestige-Gen remained
   of the wound not a vestige remained

2. neuplyne klidného dne
   not-pass peaceful day-Gen
   not a peaceful day would pass off

3. není třeba ekonomického vzdělání
   is-not necessary economic education
   there is no need for economic education

4. nikde nebylo jediného světla
   nowhere was-not single light-Gen
   not one single light appeared

5. není sporu o tom, že není vody
   is-not doubt about it that is-not water-Gen
   there is no denying that there is no water

6. 
   nebýt Honzy, nejedli bychom
   were-not John-Gen we-not-eat would
   if it were not for John, we would not eat
3. Rules of annotation

2.2.3.8. Subject expressed by partitive genitive

1. peněž ubylo

money-\textit{Gen} has-run-low

2. vody přibylo

water-\textit{Gen} has-risen

3. bylo zapotřebí řady měsíců naléhání

was necessary \textit{numbers} months-\textit{Gen} of-insistence

\textit{numbers of months of insistence} were necessary

4. dostávalo se lékařské péče

was-available Reflex. medical care-\textit{Gen}

medical care was available

5. ze stromů napadalo jablek

apples have dropped apples-\textit{Gen}

apples have dropped from the trees

Mind! A partitive genitive can figure as \textit{Sb} unless there is a quantitative modification governing it: then the governing node of this modification is the \textit{Sb}, while the genitive forms are its \textit{Atr} (cf. \textit{ze stromů napadalo hodně jablek} - plenty of apples have dropped from the trees). This problem is treated in more detail in 6.3.3. Genitive in the function of \textit{Sb}, \textit{Obj} and in the function of their \textit{Atr}.

2.2.3.9. Subject expressed by a genitive possessive by origin

1. přišli k nám důchodních

came to us officials-\textit{Gen}

\textit{lit.: the inland-revenue officials’} [i.e. the official with his wife] have arrived
2.2.3.10. Subject expressed by a prepositional case

Prepositional cases with partitive, approximative meanings are concerned.

1. lampy rozžehlo na sta mušek
   lamps-Acc lighted about hundreds of fireflies
   hundreds of fireflies lighted up their lamps

2. na každém rohu bylo po hospodě
   at each corner was by pub
   there was a pub at each corner

3. odešlo ke dvacetí lidem
   left towards twenty people
   towards twenty people have left

4. napadlo přes půl metru sněhu
   it-fell over half meter of snow
   it made over half a meter of snow

5. kolem třetiny obyvatelstva kouří
   about one-third of population smokes

2.2.3.11. Subject expressed by a numeral

For more detailed information see 3.6.3. Expression with numerals, figures in different functions, and also 3.6.9. Phrases of comparison with conjunctions jako (as), než (than).
3. Rules of annotation

1. dva tisíce křesťanů souhlasí
two thousand of-Christians agree

2. ani jedna ze dvou zón nebyla uzavřena
   not one of two zones was-not closed
   neither of the two zones was closed

3. lidí chodí méně než loni
   people-Gen come less than last-year
   less people are coming than last year

4. nerodí se mnoho dětí
   not-born Refl many children
   not many children are born

5. kolik z nás má čisté svědomí
   how-many of us have clear conscience

6. zbývá více než šest mužů
   is-left more than six men
   there are more than six men left

7. zbývá mu více jablek než hrušek
   is-left him more apples than pears
   he has more apples left than pears

8. nezbývá mu nic jiného než mlčet
   is-not-left him nothing else than to-be-silent
   he has no other choice but to keep silent
2.2.3.12. Subject expressed by infinitive

1. jíst je obřad
to-eat is ceremony

2. lze odejít
is-possible to-leave
one can leave

3. je hloupé odjíždět
is stupid to-depart

4. podařilo se odstartovat závod
succeeded Refl to-start race
they succeeded in getting the race started

Note

The word lze is a syntactic verb and it forms a simple verbal predicate (the part 3.2.1.4. Simple verbal predicate), consequently it does not represent a modal verb (part 3.2.1.5. Compound verbal predicate) and the infinitive here can fulfill the function of a subject.

2.2.3.13. Subject expressed by a subordinate clause introduced by a relative pronoun

kdo se bojí, nesmí do lesa
who Refl is-frightened must-not to wood
whoever is frightened, must not enter a wood
3. Rules of annotation

2.2.3.14. Subject expressed by a subordinate clause introduced by a conjunction

A subject clause can be introduced by conjunctions že, aby, -li, zda, jak, když (that, so that, if, whether, how ...).

1. 

štve mják to jde pomalu
irritates me how it proceeds slowly
it irritates me how slowly it proceeds

2. 

dá se vytušit, jak litují
is-possible Refl to-imagine how they-regret
it can be imagined how they regret

3. je nejisté, zda vláda skutečně chtě
is uncertain whether government really wants
it is uncertain whether the government is really willing

4. není rozumné, když se nás straní
is-not reasonable when Refl us s/he-keeps-away
it is not within reason when (s/he) is keeping away from us

5. zdá se, že začneme
seems Refl that we-start
it seems that we are going to start

6. je nesmyslné, půjdou-li tam všichni
is nonsensical if-they-go there all
it is a nonsense if they go there all
3. Rules of annotation

7. je hloupé, aby zůstal
   is stupid that he-stayed
   *it is stupid that he may stay*

8. nelze, aby odešel
   is-impossible that he-left
   *it is impossible that he leaves*

9. je možné, že neodejde
   is possible that s/he-does-not-leave
   *it is possible that s/he does not leave*

### 2.2.3.15. Subject expressed by dative

1. obdobně tomu bude doma
   similarly *it-Dät will-be at-home*
   *it will be similar at home*

2. je tomu tak
   is *it-Dät so*
   *that is the way it is*

### 2.2.3.16. Subject expressed by the pronoun *což* (*what, which*) in a pseudo-relative clause

Conjunction of sentences of which the second is introduced by relative pronoun *což* is regarded as a coordination where the *což* in the second sentence is considered as the sentence member for which it stands (see part 4.1.3.3. Coordination in sentences with *což* (*which*), *přičemž* (*whilst*)).
3. Rules of annotation

ubylo běhání po úřadech, což mnohé zdřívalo
it-diminished running about offices which many detained
some running about offices has dropped off, which had been wasting time of
many (people/things?)

2.2.3.17. Subject introduced by the conjunction než (than, but)

nejbývá než čekat
it-doesn’t-remain but to-wait
there is no other choice but to wait

3.2.2.4. Possible confusion of subject and object

In assigning analytical functions Sb and Obj a confusion often is present, especially in:

- passive constructions

ruší se udělování (=Sb) medailí
is-cancelled Refl awarding of-medals
 awarding medals is discontinued
3. Rules of annotation

- predicative constructions in which subject is expressed by infinitive

  na důkaz stačí zapnout (=Sb) televizor
  as evidence suffices to-turn-on television

- cases where subject is expressed by a sentence

  z toho vyplývá, že půjdu (=Sb) spát
  from that follows that I-am-going to-sleep

In case of doubt a simple test can be used - to introduce a feminine noun of the paradigm žena, where the forms of nominative and accusative are different. E.g., in the sentence Hitlerovi se nepodařilo tisíciletou říši ustavit (Hitler failed to establish the thousand-years empire) the word ustavit (establish) functions as subject - it can be said žena-Nom se podařila, not ženu-Acc se podařila. Similarly also in other examples:

1. nalezly se finance — nalezla se žena-Nom (funds have been found – a woman has been found)
2. uvádí se, že Tibet je okupován — uvádí se pravda-Nom (it is claimed that Tibet has been occupied – truth is claimed)
3. navrhuje se, aby přídavky činily... — navrhuje se kravina-Nom (it is suggested that the bonuses make up... — a nonsense is suggested)
4. konstatuje se, že je vše v pořádku — konstatuje se nepravda-Nom (it is stated that everything is OK – untruth is stated)

3.2.3. Attribute Atr, AtrAdv, AdvAtr, AtrAtr, AtrObj, ObjAtr

3.2.3.1. INFO ATR

This section is devoted to Attribute. First, in the part 3.2.3.2. Defining Atr, it will be defined; we find that there are concordant and discordant (agreeing and non-agreeing) attributes, both being formally represented in the same manner on the analytical level.

We use more than one single function Atr for attribute: owing to a certain ambiguity we have had to introduce also the so-called combined functions: they are such “afuns” as AtrAtr, AtrAdv, AdvAtr, AtrObj and ObjAtr - all to be treated in the part 3.2.3.3. Combined functions.

An extensive part 3.2.3.4. Expression of Atr follows, concerning the ways of expression of attributes. An agreeing attribute is expressed by an adjective (2.3.4.1. Agreeing attribute expressed by an adjective) and less frequently by a
3. Rules of annotation

noun (2.3.4.2. Agreeing attribute expressed by a noun). A non-agreeing attribute is usually expressed by a genitive of a noun (2.3.4.3. Non-agreeing attribute expressed by a genitive noun), but quite frequently also by some other simple case (2.3.4.4. Non-agreeing attribute expressed by a noun in another prepositionless case), a noun introduced by the conjunction jako (as, like) (2.3.4.5. Non-agreeing attribute expressed by a noun introduced by the conjunction jako (as, like)) or by a prepositional case (2.3.4.6. Non-agreeing attribute expressed by a noun in prepositional case). In specific cases, it can be expressed by an adverb, too (2.3.4.7. Non-agreeing attribute expressed by an adverb), and, with certain nouns, by an infinitive (2.3.4.8. Non-agreeing attribute expressed by infinitive). Apart from all these possibilities an attribute can be expressed by a subordinate clause (2.3.4.9. Attribute expressed by a subordinate clause).

At the end of this section, in the part 3.2.3.5. Non-agreeing attribute in a non-projective position in the sentence, some points concern the problem of a non-projective position of the attribute in a sentence.

3.2.3.2. Defining Atribute

Attribute is a sentence member which depends on a noun in any of its sentential functions and which, as a rule, specifies more closely, or “determines” its meaning. In inquiring about attributes we use such interrogative pronouns as which, what or whose connected with the governing noun. Attribute either agrees with its governing member or it is governed by it, or its dependency is not expressed by a special form.

An attribute that agrees, at least in case, with the noun on which it depends, is called agreeing attribute. If this attribute is represented by an adjective (a pronoun or a numeral in this status) it agrees in case, number and gender. In rare cases there occur attributes of feminine gender pertaining to masculine nouns as a means of emotional expression, e.g., kluk ušatá - a long-eared-Fem urchin-Masc.

An attribute that does not decline in accordance with its governing noun and, as a rule, represents a case different from that of this noun, or is expressed by an adverb or an infinitive, is called a non-agreeing attribute.

An attribute can be expressed by a subordinate clause, introduced by a conjunction or by a relative pronoun. An attributive clause, however, cannot be seen in such a “pseudo-expansion” as, e.g., já viděl anděla a ten měl strašný štít (I saw an angel and he had a formidable shield), nor in clauses joined by expressions such as což, přičemž (what, at which), etc. These are interpreted as coordination of head clauses - see 3.4.1. Coordination (sentential, of sentence parts) Coord, <afun> _Co (on což especially the part 4.1.3.3. Coordination in sentences with což (which), přičemž (whilst)).
A descriptive (non-restrictive) attribute is separated by commas in the sentence (chovanci, umístění v ústavu, něco sebrali - the inmates, confined in the institute, have pinched something). Such an attribute obtains the function Atr, too (not Atr_Pa), as the case is not a parenthesis, for which it could be taken by mistake.

Afun Atr, however, can also be used in some instances in which the case is not a classical attribute. Thus, it can be obtained by parts of addresses or parts of the text in foreign languages. We can use it in analyzing numerical expressions as well. These problems are dealt with in 3.6.2. Addresses and names of persons and institutions, 3.6.10. Foreign words in the text, and 3.6.3. Expression with numerals, figures in different functions.

3.2.3.3. Combined functions

In addition to Atr also combined “afuns” have been introduced, which consist of Atr and some other function. They are afuns AtrAtr, AtrAdv, AdvAtr, AtrObj, ObjAtr. These functions are used where the analyzed member (node) can stand in more functions in the framework of the given sentence without having its meaning substantially changed (the sentence is not strictly homonomous as far as the function of the analyzed member is concerned).

Therefore, if the node can constitute an attribute (Atr) of two or more nodes in the same branch of the tree above, we use afun AtrAtr. The node marked in this way will be suspended under the lowest node to be considered (it can fulfil the function of an attribute of that node). In the example given below the function AtrAtr will be assigned to the prepositional case s máslem (with butter). It obviously can form an attribute either to the member krajíc (slice) or to the member chleba (bread), while the meaning of the sentence remains essentially the same. It will, however, be suspended under the node chleba, since this modifies the node krajíc and, therefore, is situated lower in the branch.

krajíc chleba s máslem
slice of-bread with butter
3. Rules of annotation

The remaining four functions are intended for cases where some member can constitute an attribute (of one node or of more nodes as in the preceding case) and an adverbial (Adv) at the same time or an object (Obj) of a predicate placed above. Such a member then obtains an afun composed of the two basic ones pertaining to it. Which of the two components comes first and which of them second depends on which function it satisfies more often, which of them is more probable. This decision is difficult to describe in general terms, it will depend on the the annotator’s attitude. If the annotator feels that a given member is rather an attribute, he will use the functions AtrAdv or AtrObj. Otherwise he will use one of the other two.

Whichever of the functions may be present, the given node will always be situated in the same position in the tree, namely in the position in which it would be placed as an attribute (Atr). It never depends directly from the predicate. In exceptional cases when in addition to the function Adv or Obj the given member would fulfil more functions of Atr (attribute in relation to more nodes), it will be suspended in the same way as in the case of afun AtrAtr, i.e. on the lowest situated one of all these nodes (cf. the example (3) below).

1. přinesla bednu ze sklepa
   she-brought case from basement

2. zbyl mi čas na čtení
   left me time for reading
   *I have some time left for reading*
3. Rules of annotation

3. 

mimořádnou splátku části dluhu naší
extraordinary instalment of-part of-debt our
pojišťovně nezaplatíme
insurance-company-Dat we-are-not-going-to-pay
we are not going to pay the extraordinary instalment of the part of the debt to
our insurance office

4. 

uzavřeli mír s nepřáteli
they-made peace with enemies
3. Rules of annotation

3.2.3.4. Expression of \( \text{Atr} \)

2.3.4.1. Agreeing attribute expressed by an adjective

1. \( \text{červená písmena} \)
   \( \text{red letters} \)

2. \( \text{královnin náhrdelník} \)
   \( \text{queen’s necklace} \)

3. \( \text{dívčí smích} \)
   \( \text{girl’s laugh} \)

4. \( \text{Husovo upálení} \)
   \( \text{Hus’ burning-to-death} \)

5. \( \text{vynikající pivo} \)
   \( \text{outstanding beer} \)

6. \( \text{přečtené noviny} \)
   \( \text{read-over newspapers} \)

2.3.4.2. Agreeing attribute expressed by a noun

As a matter of fact, this is a substitute for adjectival forms of attributes, cf. E. ogre monster, Ajax Amsterdam, Miss neighbour etc.

In a collocation such as my Němci (we the Germans) the pronoun my (we) gets the position of the head and Němci (Germans) has the position of its attribute; agreement is ensured.
3. Rules of annotation

1. \[ \text{maminka} \]
   \[ \text{nebožka} \]
   the-dead(Noun) mother

2. \[ \text{Viktorka} \]
   \[ \text{Žlčkov} \]
   Ajax Amsterdam
   Ajax Amsterdam

3. \[ \text{my} \]
   \[ \text{Češi} \]
   my Němci
   we Germans

2.3.4.3. Non-agreeing attribute expressed by a genitive noun

Possessive genitive, g. of property, explicative g., partitive g., g. of comparison, all fall within this category; so does, with deverbative nouns, g. of actor (of subject) and that of goal of action (of object). Problems could be connected with the representation of partitive genitive; this is dealt with in detail in 3.6.3. Expression with numerals, figures in different functions

1. \[ \text{chalupa} \]
   \[ \text{sousedá} \]
   cottage our-Gen neighbour-Gen
   našeho souseda
   our-Gen neighbour-Gen

60
2.3.4.4. Non-agreeing attribute expressed by a noun in another prepositionless case

A non-agreeing attribute can also be expressed by a dative, an instrumental, an accusative or a nominative of naming. The nominative of naming is a specification of a governing word that is of a more general nature.
3. Rules of annotation

1. vyučování jazyku
   teaching language-Dat

2. výživa zeleninou
   nurturing vegetables-Instr

3. rozhled krajinou
   view landscape-Instr

4. práskání bičem
   cracking whip-Instr

5. lhůta hodinu
   time-limit one-hour-Acc

6. trvání hodinu
   continuation one-hour-Acc

7. s názvem Poupé
   with title Poupé

8. křídlo značky Petrof
   grand-piano of-make Petrof

9. pokoj 26
   room 26
3. Rules of annotation

10.

na dveřích visel nápis “Neprodejné”
on door hung inscription not-for-sale
an inscription “Not for sale” was hanging on the door

2.3.4.5. Non-agreeing attribute expressed by a noun introduced by the conjunction jako (as, like)

An attribute can be introduced by the conjunction jako (like). This expression of an attribute must not be mistaken for the comparative phrase with jako (e.g. with stejně jako similarly as, jako když as when, jako v+N as in+N), described in 3.6.9. Phrases of comparison with conjunctions jako (as), než (than).

1.

docílil toho formulacemi jako kulatý čtverec
he-achieved it by-formulations as round square
he attained to it by such formulations as round square
3. Rules of annotation

2. kuchyň jako dlaně
   kitchen like palm
   a kitchen like the palm of a hand

3. facka jako vrata
   slap like gate
   a slap like hell

2.3.4.6. Non-agreeing attribute expressed by a noun in prepositional case

1. vyprávění o vojně
   narration about war

2. modlitba k bohům
   prayer to Gods

3. pochybovač o čemkoli
   a-sceptic about anything

4. šelma od kostí
   joker to marrow
   a wag/joker to the marrow

5. nenávist vůči společnosti
   hatred towards society

6. smrt z hladu
   death from hunger

7. čtení pro děti
   reading for children

8. okno o šesti tabulkách
   window of six panes
3. Rules of annotation

9. talíř z porcelánu
   plate of porcelain

10. průkazka na měsíc
    permit to moon

11. zkouška v zimním semestru
    exam in winter term

12. přechod z obrany do útoku
    passing from defence to attack

13. krajíc chleba s máslem
    slice of bread with butter

14. nikdo z nás
    none of us
3. Rules of annotation

15. živější z mužů si počali pohvizdovat
the more lively of men \Refl{} started to whistle
the more lively ones of the men started to whistle for themselves

16. poslední tůhýk z těch, kteří přežíli
last butcher-bird of those that survived

17. od každých dva kusy
from each two pieces
two pieces from each

2.3.4.7. Non-agreeing attribute expressed by an adverb

In exceptional cases an adverb can become an Atr, if a deleted adjective can be restored as the head of the adverb. The restored adjective will, for the most part, be
3. Rules of annotation

derived from a participle (*ryl do lidí stojících okolo* - he teased the people standing around).

1. 

```
   ryl
     do
       lidí
         Obj
           Attr

   okolo
     Atr
```

*ryl do lidí okolo*  
he-teased to people *around*

2. dveře vlevo vedou ven  
  door *on-the-left* lead outside

2.3.4.8. Non-agreeing attribute expressed by infinitive

Its head noun usually expresses will, necessity, capability, possibility, habit etc., and have the infinitive in their valency frame.

1. snaha *opatřit si* krev  
endeavour *to-get* for-himself blood

2. povinnost *zaplavit*  
duty *to-pay*

3. síla *trpět*  
fortitude *to-suffer*

4. potěšení ji *vidět*  
pleasure *her-ACC to-see*

5. rozkoš *sedět*  
delight *to-sit*
2.3.4.9. Attribute expressed by a subordinate clause

Attribute can also be expressed by a subordinate attributive clause. The function $\text{Atr}$ then will be given to the predicate of this subordinate clause (see the part 2.1.2.1. Dependency of the predicate).

Apparent subordinate clauses introduced by such words as což, přičemž (which, with which) are not regarded as $\text{Atr}$ (see the part 3.2.3.2. Defining $\text{Atr}$).

1. 

```
muž, který spí
man who sleeps
```

2. 

```
vědomí, že smrt nečeká
knowledge that death does-not-wait
```

3. 

```
byly tam špatné podmínky, jako jsou překážky a sníh
were there bad conditions such as are obstacles and snow
```

4. 

```
plán, jak republiku rozkrášť
plan how republic-Acc to-pilfer
a plan of how to pilfer the property of the Republic
```

5. 

```
motiv, proč ji zabil
motive why her he-killed
```

---

68
3. Rules of annotation

A special case can be seen in absolute relative *co* and *jak* (*what, how*). If it can be recognized which word they stand for, they obtain the function of this word in the similar way as the pronominal conjunctive expressions mentioned above (ex. (1)). Should their representative function be unclear (if they duplicate the function of some other word), they obtain afun AuxO and they get suspended under the predicate of their clause (ex. (2)).

1. ten dopis, co napsal Tonda
   the letter that wrote Tony

2. sud, co ho Tonda narazil
   cask that *it-Acc* Tony broached

3.2.3.5. Non-agreeing attribute in a non-projective position in the sentence

The agreeing attribute as a rule comes immediately after its noun. However, there are exceptions in which the attribute can be found at some other place in the sentence and, all the same, it does not represent an Adv dependent on the verb.

This happens when the attribute cannot be suspended under the verb in accordance to intuition, but a valency slot of the particular noun requires the attribute (such a valency can be obvious in cases in which the noun is a verbal noun whose original verb has an object valency to be satisfied by the participant in question). The separation of the attribute from its head noun in the word-order is motivated by topic/comment articulation.

The boundaries between Atr and Adv are also discussed in the part 3.2.5.6. The boundaries of Adv and Atr.
3. Rules of annotation

1. po zločinci vyhlásili pátrání
   for criminal they-announced search
   they publicly announced search for the criminal

2. o Letnou je teď malý zájem
   in Letná is now little interest

3. komora přijala k zákonu doprovodné usnesení
   house adopted to bill accompanying decision

4. nejsou proti němu důkazy
   are-not against him evidences

5. na něho nemůže nikdo podat žalobu
   on him cannot nobody put accusation
   nobody can impeach him

6. už na to není doba
   already for it is-not time
   the times for it do not exist any more

7. od dveří ztratil klíč
   from door he-lost key
   he lost the key to the door
3. Rules of annotation

8. z chování dostal trojku
   for conduct he-obtained a-three
   for his conduct he obtained a low mark

3.2.4. Object Obj, ObjAtr, AtrObj

3.2.4.1. INFO OBJ

In the part 3.2.4.2. Definition of Obj below, we define the object to which this section is devoted. We find that our conception as compared with Šmilauer’s approach is somewhat broader.

Moreover, in the part 3.2.4.3. Combined functions we will be concerned with the so-called combined functions AtrObj and ObjAtr.

Then we shall deal with possibilities to express classical object, which can be found in the part 3.2.4.4. Expressing Obj. An object can be expressed by a noun in accusative (2.4.4.1. Expression of object by a noun in accusative), genitive (2.4.4.2. Expression of object by a noun in genitive), dative (2.4.4.3. Expression of object by a noun in dative), instrumental (2.4.4.4. Expression of object by a noun in instrumental), further by a prepositional case (2.4.4.5. Expression of object by a noun in prepositional case), infinitive (2.4.4.6. Expression of object by an infinitive), and by a subordinate clause (2.4.4.7. Expression of object by a subordinate clause). Also a reflexive pronoun (se/si) can occur in the function Obj (2.4.4.8. Reflexive pronoun se (...self)).

Lastly, we shall come back to the types of object which Šmilauer defines in another way and which can be expressed in some other form than it has been described above. This concerns such types as origin and result in the part 3.2.4.5. Object of the type Origin and Result and object after copula and semi-copulative verbs in the part 3.2.4.6. Object after copulas and semi-copulas.

3.2.4.2. Definition of Obj

Object is a modifying sentence member. As a rule, it is governed by a verb (i.e. the verb determines the case form of the its Obj), or by an adjective. As Obj all kinds of objects (direct, indirect as well as effect or second object) are denoted. An object represents either what is the result of an action (napsat dopis-Acc - to write a letter), or what has been directly affected by the action (dotknout se stolu-Genitive - to touch a table), or what the action is directly aiming at (radit chlapci-Dative - to advise a boy).
3. Rules of annotation

Being governed by its head, the object differs from Adv, the form of which is not determined by its head (see 3.2.5. Adverbials (and borderline cases)). The problems of verbal and adjectival government (‘rection’) are complicated to such an extent that even the information on these constructions in their individual entries contained in the Dictionary of Standard Czech (Slovník spisovné češtiny) often do not satisfy our needs.

We understand as Obj also the dependents mentioned by Šmilauer as special types of adverbials called “origin” and “effect” and as “constructional complement”. These two instances are dealt with in the parts 3.2.4.5. Object of the type Origin and Result and 3.2.4.6. Object after copulas and semi-copulas.

As noted in the part 2.4.4.6. Expression of object by an infinitive, owing to our conception of predicate we also define as Obj the infinitive with modal or phasal verbs. (See the part 3.2.1.5. Compound verbal predicate.)

3.2.4.3. Combined functions

The combined functions are dealt with in detail in the part 3.2.3.3. Combined functions, where all of them are described. Two of them concern the problem of object - AtrObj and ObjAtr - to be only briefly mentioned here. The combined functions are used where the analysed member (node) can figure in more functions within the given sentence, without the meaning being substantially changed by this fact (the sentence is not strictly homonymous in what concerns the function of the member analysed).

Therefore, the mentioned two functions we use in case a member can figure as object (Obj) of its predicate and, at the same time, an attribute (Atr) of some node situated lower in the tree. If the annotator feels that the given member is rather an attribute, he will use the function AtrObj. Otherwise ObjAtr will be assigned.

No matter which of the two functions may be used, the given node will always take the same place in the tree, namely, that where it would be placed if it were an attribute (Atr). Therefore, it will never depend directly on the predicate.

1. mimořádnou splátku části dluhu naší
   extraordinary instalment of-part of-debt our
   pojišťovně nezaplatíme
   insurance-company we-are-not-going-to-pay
   we are not going to pay the extraordinary instalment of the part of the debt to
   our insurance office
3. Rules of annotation

2. uzavřeli mír s nepřáteli
   they-made peace with enemies

3.2.4.4. Expressing Obj

The object is expressed by a syntactic noun in accusative, genitive, dative, instrumental, prepositional case or by infinitive or a subordinate clause.

In some cases the function Obj is assigned to a reflexive pronoun se — see 3.6.8. Reflexive se, si.

2.4.4.1. Expression of object by a noun in accusative

Accusative is the basic object case.

1. Mirek nenáviděl větně rozbor
   Mirek hated sentence analysis

2. zavolal domovníka
   he-called doorkeeper

3. vykopal jámu
   he-dug hole

4. dostal facku
   he-got slap

In some circumstances locative with the preposition po can be used instead of accusative. Partitiveness (sharing) can be expressed in this way. The construction dostala po květině (she obtained a flower (apiece, one by each admirer, friend, etc.)), corresponds to the construction of she obtained a flower.
3. Rules of annotation

3.1. Annotation of objects

3.2. Annotation of relationships

3.3. Annotation of adverbial phrases

3.4. Annotation of prepositional phrases

3.5. Annotation of adjectives

3.6. Annotation of adverbs

3.7. Annotation of conjunctions

3.8. Annotation of interjections

3.9. Annotation of nouns

3.10. Annotation of pronouns

3.11. Annotation of verbs

3.12. Annotation of adverbial clauses

3.13. Annotation of relative clauses


3.15. Annotation of non-finite forms

3.16. Annotation of infinitives

3.17. Annotation of participles

3.18. Annotation of gerunds

3.19. Annotation of nominalizations

3.20. Annotation of prepositional phrases

3.21. Annotation of adverbial clauses

2.4.4.2. Expression of object by a noun in genitive

1. žák dosáhl cíle
   pupil attained objective

2. pacient byl znalý poměrů
   patient was familiar with-conditions-Gen

3. vzdál se svého práva
   he-gave-up Refl his rights

4. dovolávala se minulých výkladů
   she-referred Refl past explanations-Gen

5. nebyla schopna zdravého úsudku
   she-was-not capable of-sound judgement-Gen
3. Rules of annotation

6. byl plný piva
   he-was full of-beer-Gen

7. byla hodna uznání
   she-was worthy of-recognition-Gen

Partitive genitive and genitive of negation belong to this type, too, although they are not 'governed' in the strict sense. The verbs on which they depend prototypically govern accusative constructions. The genitive object just competes with the accusative pattern and its use is motivated semantically.

The partitive genitive can play the role of an Obj, but if a quantitative modification governs the genitive, this modification figures as Obj and the noun in genitive becomes its Atr. This problem is dealt with in more detail in the part 6.3.3. Genitive in the function of Sb, Obj and in the function of their Atr.

1. Xaver navařil dobrého gouláše
   Xaver cooked good goulash

2. přidal tam soli
   he-added there salt

3. nenašli ani stopy
   they-did-not-find any trace
   they failed to find any trace
3. Rules of annotation

4. neřekl ani slova
   he-did-not-utter any word
   he did not utter one word

2.4.4.3. Expression of object by a noun in dative

Apart from the accusative, dative represents the basic object case. It is either the only (direct) object (ex. (1)), or it stands along with the accusative object, being then referred to as indirect object (ex. (2)). This type of expression comes close to the adverbial ethical dative. Distinguishing them and other problems are described in 3.6.5. The boundary line between free and 'bound' dative.

1. Joe ran Bobeš-Dat across

   Pepík běžel Bobešovi naproti
   Joe ran to meet Bobeš

2. aunt is-writing Emily-Dat letter

   teta píše Emílii dopis
   aunt is-writing Emily-Dat letter

3. phenomenon x corresponds to-phenomenon-Dat y

   jev x odpovídá jevu y

For the most part, adjectives with dative are adjectives of action.
3. Rules of annotation

1. 

byl přístupný kompromisům
he-was open to-compromises-Dat

2. 

je zdraví škodlivý
it-is health-Dat damaging

As Obj also the so-called subject dative is regarded, which is illustrated by the following three examples. It is also mentioned in 3.6.5. The boundary line between free and 'bound' dative.

1. 

chtělo se mi spát
it-wanted Refl me-Dat to-sleep
I felt sleepy

2. 

nemocnému se dýchá lépe
sick-man-Dat Refl it-breathes better
the sick man breathed more easily
3. Rules of annotation

2.4.4.4. Expression of object by a noun in instrumental

Instrumental represents predominantly an adverbial case. Only rarely it happens to be a case governed by its head, preserving at the same time apparent traces of adverbial meaning, especially that of instrument. As an object it usually figures after verbs having the meaning of moving something (ex. (1)), deal with st., engage in st. (ex. (2)), handle, save up, waste (ex. (3)) and call, address s.o. as (ex. (4)).

On the borderline between adverbial and object, nouns in instrumental modify verbs of sensual perception (tábor zněl zpěvem - the camp resounded with singing) and also verbs with meaning 'provide with' (pokrýt střechu slámov - to cover the roof with straw). These cases are characterized here as Adv (see 3.2.5. Adverbials (and borderline cases)).

1.

Vojtěch házel míčem
Albert was-throwing ball-Instr
Albert was throwing a ball

2.

Zabýval se sběratelstvím
he-engaged Refl. collecting-Instr
3. Rules of annotation

3. nesmíš plýtvat jídlem
you-must-not waste food-Instr

4. nazývala ho trubcem
she-called him drone-Instr

The actor in passive constructions is always regarded as Obj here.

byl pozvracen opilcem
he-was stained-with-vomit by-drunk-Instr

2.4.4.5. Expression of object by a noun in prepositional case

Governed nouns are only accompanied by basic (simple) prepositions, which lose their meaning nuances in them, getting grammaticalized strongly. E.g., in the phrase myslet na někoho - to think of s.o., the preposition na does not display its meaning of being placed on a surface. (The original meaning remains in adverbial cases not governed by their heads - e.g. sedl si na stůl - he sat down on a table.) The transition between Obj and Adv is smooth here, which means that finding an exact boundary is impossible.
3. Rules of annotation

Also the locative case with the preposition *po* can have the function of *Obj*. As we have mentioned, it is used in place of plain accusative (2.4.4.1. Expression of object by a noun in accusative). In this way partitiveness is expressed where the construction *dostala po květině* (she obtained a flower (by each ...)) corresponds to *dostala květinu* - she obtained a flower.

2.4.4.6. Expression of object by an infinitive

1. *nedovede lhát*
   - he-cannot *to-lie*

2. *odmítá odejít*
   - he-refuses *to-leave*
3. Rules of annotation

3. slibovali zustat do konce
   they-promised to-stay till end

4. zvykl si pracovat
   he-got-used refl to-work

If case government is signalled by means of a (pronominal) reference expression, the infinitive is regarded here as an attribute of the reference word, which obtains the function Obj. (See 6.4.1. Referring pronoun to (that)).

Note

In our view the function Obj is also assigned to infinitives connected with modal or phasal verbs (i.e. they are parts of compound predicates) although they cannot be replaced by nouns or subordinate object clauses, as is possible in other infinitival constructions (see the part 3.2.1.5. Compound verbal predicate.)
3. Rules of annotation

2.4.4.7. Expression of object by a subordinate clause

1. cítíla, jak na ni jdou mdloby
   she-felt as on her go faints-Nom
   she felt that she would fall into a faint

2. pamatuj, že d’ábel se vrátí
   remember that devil Refl will-come-back

3. bránila mu, aby odešel
   she-kept-away him that he-left
   she kept him away from leaving
3. Rules of annotation

4. nevěděla, kdy zmizí
she-did-not-know when s/he-will-disappear

2.4.4.8. Reflexive pronoun se (…self)

For the reflexive pronoun se, si in the function Obj see 3.6.8. Reflexive se, si.

3.2.4.5. Object of the type Origin and Result

Šmilauer regards Origin and Result as special types of adverbials. We, however, assign the function Obj to them.

1. vyrůst z něčeho
   to-grow-out of something

2. vyrůst v něco
   to-grow into something

3. vyrobit z něčeho
   make-out of something

4. předělat z něčeho
   convert from something

5. předělat na něco
   convert into something
3. Rules of annotation

6. vědět od někoho
   know from someone

7. získat od někoho
   get from someone

8. změnit z něčeho
   change from something

9. změnit na něco
   change into something

3.2.4.6. Object after copulas and semi-copulas

1. 

```
   stane
   se
   ovladatelným
   Obj
   stane se ovladatelným
   s/he-becomes Refl controllable
```

2. stane se odpadlíkem
   s/he-becomes Refl dissident

3. jmenovali ji předsedkyní
   they-appointed her chairperson

4. pokládám to za diskriminaci
   I-regard this as discrimination

5. označila návrh za špatný
   she-declared proposal as bad

6. označil návrh jako blbost
   he-declared proposal as rubbish

7. to mi připadá idealistické
   this me seems idealistic
   I find it idealistic
3. Rules of annotation

8. číslo se mi zdá závratné
   number Refl me seems extremely-high
   the number seems extremely high to me

9. shledal ji nevěrohodnou
   he-found her untrustworthy

10. otázka zůstává otevřena
    question remains open

11. zákazník se jeví chudým
    customer Refl appears needy

12. zákazník se jeví jako chudý
    customer Refl appears as needy

When the above expression of objects is introduced by jako (as), the latter word is assigned a function and gets suspended under the node Obj (see also the part 2.7.7.4. The conjunction jako introducing complement or object).

označil jej jako ignoranta
he-denounced him as ignoramus

3.2.5. Adverbials (and borderline cases)

3.2.5.1. INFO ADV

After a specification of adverbials in 3.2.5.2. Specification of adverbials the so-called combined functions are mentioned in 3.2.5.3. Combined functions and different problems with the determination of adverbials are discussed: temporal adverbials (3.2.5.4. Problematic cases of temporal modifications), combination of more such adverbials side by side (2.5.4.1. Two and more adjacent temporal modifications in the sentence), temporal modifications with relation to the situation (2.5.4.2. Temporal modification relative to an event), adverbials expressing repetition (2.5.4.3. Adverbial of temporal repetition and 2.5.4.4. Temporal adverbial expressing
3. Rules of annotation

repetition lexically), temporal adverbials modified by a specification of speed (2.5.4.5. Temporal adverbial modified by stating the rate of speed). Adverbials of location expressed in relation to the place are discussed in 2.5.5.1. Local adverbial relating to some place. The boundary between Adv and Atr is often difficult to be drawn; these situation are described in 3.2.5.6. The boundaries of Adv and Atr.

The means of expressions are discussed in 3.2.5.7. Expression of adverbials: nouns in 2.5.7.1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun, adverbs in 2.5.7.2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb, adverbs in collocations in 2.5.7.3. Adverbial expressed by an adverb phraseology, infinitive in 2.5.7.4. Adverbial expressed by an infinitive and by a subordinate clause in 2.5.7.5. Adverbial expressed by a subordinate clause. A special type of expression is that with the conjunctions jako (as) and než (than), which is illustrated in 2.5.7.6. Adverbial expressed by a clause (or a group) with conjunctions jak(o) - as, než(li) - than.

The section 3.2.5.8. Kinds of adverbials according to meaning is devoted to a more detailed description of adverbials according to their meaning, since each of such a subclass has forms of its own: local (2.5.8.1. Adverbial of place), temporal (2.5.8.2. Adverbial of time), manner (2.5.8.3. Adverbial of manner), extent (2.5.8.4. Adverbial of measure), means (2.5.8.5. Adverbial of means), regard (2.5.8.6. Adverbial of respect), causal (2.5.8.7. Adverbial of cause), consequence (2.5.8.8. Adverbial of consequence), aim (2.5.8.9. Adverbial of purpose), condition (2.5.8.10. Adverbial of condition), concession (2.5.8.11. Adverbial of concession) and a special class of inheritance (2.5.8.12. Adverbial of inheritance).

3.2.5.2. Specification of adverbials

Adverbials express the circumstances and relations such as location, time, manner, comparison, extent, means, cause, consequence, regard or aim. In our analytic scenario, all adverbials have the afun Adv and are not subclassified any further.

Some modifications understood by Šmilauer as adverbials are treated here as objects (Obj). This concerns modifications expressing origin and result of the action rendered by the verb (see 3.2.4.5. Object of the type Origin and Result), which are characterized by Šmilauer as not expressable by a subordinate clause; however, in our approach they are considered to be valency slots and as such they belong to the verbal frame.

Emphasized modifications are Obj:

1. získávat peníze od příznivců
get money from adherents
3. Rules of annotation

2. zvýšit příspěvek na 1000 Kč
   raise contribution to 1000 crowns

3. vyrůst z chlapce v muže
   grow-up from boy to man

Adverbials modify a verb, an adjective or an adverb, its form is given by the rection of the governing element.

A special attention is to be devoted to the discrimination between Obj and Adv. A given modification is an adverbial, if it answers an adverbial question where?, where to?, from where?, how long?, when?, for what purpose?, why?, how? etc. and if verbal rection is not concerned (i.e. in case of rection, the given modification is an object and answers questions on morphological cases: who? for Nominative, of whom? for Genitive etc.). Abstract or metaphorical meanings tend to be determined as Obj (see zaplést se do intrik to get involved in intrigues: this is not a location).

1. narazit do čeho
   to-knock at something - where to? - Adv

2. plavat v čem , pod čím , podél čeho
   to-swim in smth, under smth, along smth - where? - Adv

3. přistoupit k řece
   to-approach (to) river - where to? - Adv

But:
3. Rules of annotation

1. narázit pu
   ne
   problém
   Obj
   narázit na problém
to-meet with problem - Obj

2. zaplést se do
   intrik
   refl
   in intrigues - Obj
   to-get-involved refl in intrigues - Obj

3. přistoupit k
   řešení
   to-approach (to) solution - Obj
   to-approach (to) solution - Obj

4. zabrat se do
   čeho
   refl
   into smth. - Obj
   to-plunge refl into smth. - Obj

Adjectives (esp. deverbatives) also may be modified by objects (*plný něčeho full of something*).

1. velká
   velmi
   velmi velká
   very big
   velmi velká
   very big

2. nejtěžší od
   vypuknutí války
   hardest from beginning of-war
   nejtěžší od vypuknutí války
   hardest from beginning of-war

3. noc strávená ve
   sklepeních
   night spent in cellars
   noc strávená ve sklepeních
   night spent in cellars
Adjectives may be, of course, modified by adverbials (Adv) as well. Such an adverbial itself often functions as an adverbial. If two adverbials occur in a sentence side by side, it might be difficult to decide whether they are independent of each other or if one modifies the other, as in the following examples. See 3.2.5.4. Problematic cases of temporal modifications and 3.2.5.5. Problems of local adverbial on a discussion of the relation between two adverbials.

The dependent adverbial is \textit{emphasized}:

1. těsně před Vánocemi \\
   immediately before Christmas

2. o \textit{den} později \\
   (by) a-day later

3. daleko od Moskvy \\
   far from Moscow

4. rovnoběžně s \textit{dálnicí} \\
   in-parallel with \textit{motorway}

5. blízko k \textit{centru} \\
   close to \textit{center}
3. Rules of annotation

6. úměrně podmínkám 
   proportionally to-conditions

7. lépe než dobře 
   better than well

8. nesmírně mnoho 
   immensely many

3.2.5.3. Combined functions

Combined (‘slashed’) functions in general are described in detail in 3.2.3.3. Combined functions. In the present section only those of them that concern adverbials, i.e. AtrAdv and AdvAtr.

Combined functions are used in cases when the given node may obtain either of the possible functions in the given context without any change of meaning (i.e. the sentence is not strictly ambiguous as for the function of the given node).

The functions AtrAdv and AdvAtr are thus used in case the node concerned may be either an adverbial Adv of its predicate or an attribute of some lower node in the tree. If the annotator’s intuition prefers the attributive interpretation, s/he assigns the function AtrAdv; in the opposite case s/he assigns AdvAtr.

In both cases, the given node will always depend in that position in which it would be placed if it were an Atr; it will never depend on the verb.
3. Rules of annotation

2.5.4. Problematic cases of temporal modifications

2.5.4.1. Two and more adjacent temporal modifications in the sentence

The solution presented in this section does not claim to be a theoretical one, it is a mere convention.

In case the sentence contains several temporal adverbials, they are hung as sisters. This case is illustrated by the first six examples.

The two mutually independent adverbials are emphasized.
3. Rules of annotation

1. včera večer pil
   yesterday evening he-drank

2. včera brzy ráno místního času vstal
   yesterday early in-the-morning of-local time he-got-up

3. letos v únoru zmizel
   this-year in February he-disappeared

4. upadl v sobotu ráno
   he-fell-down on Saturday morning
3. Rules of annotation

5. přišel v sobotu v šest
he-came on Saturday at six

6. zemřel v úterý ve 4 hodiny místního času
he-died on Tuesday at 4 o’clock of-local time

If the given adverbials are not considered to be mutually independent, it is necessary to determine the direction of the relation of dependency. The first factor to be taken into account is morphology; the following rules should be applied:

**Rule 1:**
If the governing node is a morphological adverb, both the governing and the depending adverbial are assigned the afun Adv.

The governing node can be a part of a meaningful question, e.g. *when in the evening?*, or *when yesterday?*.

The repertory of words that can modify adverbs is rather small, since the adverbs mostly are placed as sisters. From the syntactic point of view, these words are often ambiguous: e.g. the word *brzo* in the construction *brzo ráno* is an equivalent of English *early (early in the morning)* and depends on the noun; however, it can also stand alone, if it has the meaning of English *soon*.

The dependent word is emphasized.
3. Rules of annotation

1. 

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{brzy} & \quad \text{rano} \\
\text{Adv} & \quad \text{Adv}
\end{align*}
\]

\textit{brzy} \textit{ rano}  \\
\textit{early} \textit{ in-the-morning}

\textbf{Rule 2:}  
If the governing node is a noun (with or without a preposition) and the dependent node is a noun in the Genitive case or accompanied by a preposition, and this node evidently has the function of an attribute (answering the question \textit{which?}), it gets the afun \textit{Atr}. Cases with nouns in Genitive are quite clear; in case the annotator hesitates, the combined afun \textit{AtrAdv} or \textit{AdvAtr} can be assigned.

The dependent \textit{Atr}'s are \textit{emphasized}.

1. 

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ve} & \quad \text{AUXP} \\
\text{hodiny} & \quad \text{Adv} \\
\text{4} & \quad \text{Atr} \\
\text{času} & \quad \text{Atr} \\
\text{místního} & \quad \text{Atr}
\end{align*}
\]

\textit{ve 4 hodiny místního času}  \\
\textit{at 4 o’clock of-local time}

2. 

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{května} & \quad \text{Adv} \\
23 & \quad \text{Atr} \\
\text{roku} & \quad \text{Atr} \\
1993 & \quad \text{Atr}
\end{align*}
\]

\textit{23. května roku 1993}  \\
\textit{23rd of-May of-the-year 1993}
3. Rules of annotation

2.5.4.2. Temporal modification relative to an event

The function of the governing node is determined by its function in the given sentence.

Let us demonstrate two possibilities how to represent two adjacent temporal modifications:

1. The governor is an adverb, the depending member is Adv (it answers such questions as *how soon? how immediately?*, *by what sooner?*). The dependent adverb is *emphasized*:

   a) 
   ```plaintext
   brzy Adv
   po AuxP
   Vánocích Adv
   ```

   brzy po Vánocích
   soon after Christmas
3. Rules of annotation

b) devět minut dříve
(by) nine minutes earlier

2. The governor is a noun, the dependent is its Atr; depending on the context, it may be also an AtrAdv or AdvAtr, and in some special cases (determined by the valency of verbs) also just Adv or Obj; notational convention: the noun attached by prepositions před (before) and po (after) are always Atr. The dependent is emphasized:

a) měsíc před porodem
month before delivery - Atr

b) 5 minut po odjezdu
5 minutes after departure - Atr
3. Rules of annotation

c) ty dva roky do dosažení zletilosti profláká
the two years till reaching full-age he-will-idle-his-time - Atr

d) zbývají mu dva roky do dosažení zletilosti
are-left to-him two years till reaching full-age - AtrAdv

e) zbývají mu do dosažení zletilosti dva roky
are-left to-him till reaching full-age two years - Adv
2.5.4.3. Adverbial of temporal repetition

In the adverbials of repetition with words such as vždy (always), kolikrát (how many times), x-krát (x-times), tolikrát (so many times) (multiples), the ...krát (...times) figures as the governing element, on which the expression of interval (rendered by an adverb or prepositional construction) depends. (The question is: how often, how many times?)

The dependent Adv emphasized:

1. sedmkrát
   každý
   týden
   seven-times every week

2. kolikrát
   ročně
   how-many-times a-year

3. každý
   měsíc
   jednou
   každý měsíc
   jen jednou
   every month just once
   just once in every month
3. Rules of annotation

4. jedenkrát ob dva týdny
once after two weeks
once every other two weeks/fortnight

2.5.4.4. Temporal adverbial expressing repetition lexically

Adverbs of repetition (*denne daily, rocne yearly,...*) and prepositional groups such as *kazdou hodinu* (every hour) or *za rok* (in a year), are primarily classified as Atr, depending on a noun (unit).

Such a potential Atr can be used as Adv and may be assigned AtrAdv/AdvAtr as well, according to usual rules (*5000 Kc daily*).

1. dvé partičky mariáše každý mêsic jsou málo
two little-games of-whist every *month* are *not-enough*
2. Temporal adverbial modified by stating the rate of speed

If distance is specified by means of time + speed, the modifying part constitutes an **Atr** of the time unit (it is being suspended under this unit, rather than on the numerical expression). With *minutes by bus*, the question runs, e.g.: *what minutes?* However, this differs from an **Adv**, present, e.g., in *jel tam 5 minut autobusem* (*he went there 5 minutes by bus*), in which *autobusem* (*by bus*) is **Adv** dependent on the verb.

1. 5 minut *autobusem* není žádná velká dálka
5 minutes *by-bus* is-not no great distance
3. Rules of annotation

2.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{ty dvě hodiny vlakem rychle uběhly} \\
\text{those two hours by-train rapidly elapsed}
\end{array}
\]

3.2.5.5. Problems of local adverbial

2.5.5.1. Local adverbial relating to some place

The rules are analogous to the rules of temporal adverbial dealt with in the part 2.5.4.2. Temporal modification relative to an event.

In what follows two possibilities of representing two contact local adverbials are described.

1. The governing member is an adverb, the subordinate member being thus Adv (questions: how near? how close? how deep? by what/by how much further/aside?).

\[
\begin{array}{c}
bližko \\
\text{close}
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
za \\
\text{outside}
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
městem \\
\text{town}
\end{array}
\]

bližko za městem
close outside town
3. Rules of annotation

b) o metr vedle
by meter aside
missing by a meter

2. The governing member is a noun, the subordinate member being its Atř; according to context it also can be AtřAdv/AtřObj, consequently in some cases Adv/Obj (in accordance with verb valency), in agreement with the rules of annotation (questions: what kilometres? what sight? what piece?). Convention: od (from) (if the case is not a valency, etc.) is only Atř. The dependent member with a different afun is emphasized.

a) dva kilometry od řeky
two kilometres from river - Atř

b) 8 mil do Prahy
8 miles to Prague - AtřAdv
3. Rules of annotation

c) do Prahy je odtud 8 mil
to Prague it is from here 8 miles - Adv
it is 8 miles to Prague from here

d) na dohled od břehu
within sight of shore - Atr

e) kousek pod jezem
a-little-bit below weir - AtrAdv

3.2.5.6. The boundaries of Adv and Atr

If two nouns (as the case may be, with a preposition) come together, that one which potentially depends on the other may become either really the other’s Atr (AtrAdv, AdvAtr), or its sister Adv.

The potentially governing member obtains its function according to context. The potentially dependent member can become its Atr (AtrAdv, AdvAtr) provided it immediately follows that governor in the word-order (ex. (1) - (5)). A non-agreeing
attribute preceding the governing word is not regarded as \textit{Atr} but for exceptional cases created by valences of nouns (\textit{interest in}, \textit{time for}, \textit{time to}, \textit{will to}, \textit{thought of}...., see 3.2.3.5. Non-agreeing attribute in a non-projective position in the sentence). In these cases it is regarded as \textit{Atr} in spite of the possibility of causing non-projectivity of the tree. If the potentially dependent member cannot become an \textit{Atr} (\textit{AtrAdv}, \textit{AdvAtr}), it is suspended as \textit{Adv} alongside the potentially governing member (exx. (6) - (9)).

\textbf{Explanation:}

ex. (2) they are really neighbour’s skis

ex. (3) it is not clear whether the skis were neighbour’s or whether he came from the neighbour

ex. (7) he came from the neighbour on some (undetermined) skis

ex. (8) \textit{Bosnia at the sea} is not the case

\begin{itemize}
  \item[1.] bydlela na Vyšehradě v Praze
  \hspace{1cm} she-lived at Vyšehrad in Prague
  \begin{itemize}
    \item[1.1.] bydlela
    \item[1.2.] na
    \item[1.3.] Vyšehradě
    \item[1.4.] Adv
    \item[1.5.] Práze
    \item[1.6.] AtrAdv
  \end{itemize}
  \item[2.] stál na lyžích od souseda
  \hspace{1cm} he-stood on skis from neighbour
  \begin{itemize}
    \item[2.1.] stál
    \item[2.2.] na
    \item[2.3.] lyžích
    \item[2.4.] Adv
    \item[2.5.] od
    \item[2.6.] souseda
    \item[2.7.] Atr
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
3. Rules of annotation

3. přijel na lyžích od souseda
   he-arrived on skis from neighbour

4. přinesla bednu ze sklepa
   she-brought case from basement

5. Kostelec nad Černými Lesy
   Kostelec over Black Woods
3. Rules of annotation

6. v Praze bydlela na Vyšehradě
   in Prague she-lived at Vyšehrad

7. na lyžích přijel od souseda
   on skis he-arrived from neighbour
   he arrived on skis from the neighbour

8. pracoval v Bosně u moře
   he-worked in Bosnia at sea

9. ze sklepa přinesla bednu
   from basement she-brought case
3. Rules of annotation

3.2.5.7. Expression of adverbials

2.5.7.1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

An adverbial can be expressed by means of a noun in an indirect case, simple or prepositional.

**Note**

As regards prepositional cases, Adv is assigned only if verbal government (“rection”) is excluded (e.g. in nesouhlasil se smlouvou - *he did not agree to the contract* - the prepositional group is governed by the verb and it gets Obj).

The described expression of Adv is printed in emphasized types

1. Aloisie pobíhala kuchyní
   Aloisia was-running kitchen-Instr
   Aloisia was running about the kitchen

2. Theofil dojede do lesa
   Theophil will-drive to wood
2.5.7.2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb

In addition to current adverbs (ex. (1)) we also regard as Adv absolute (discrete) transgressive constructions (i.e., those that neither agree nor have a subject in common with the verb, ex. (2)). The common transgressives, however, fulfill the function of complements (see the part 2.6.6.7. Complement expressed by a transgressive).

The absolute transgressive constructions mentioned above are prototypically separated by a comma; then they are regarded as parenthesis with afun Adv_Pa (see 3.5.4. A syntactically incorporated sentence part with <afun>_Pa).

The described expression of Adv is printed in emphasized types

1. má se dobré
   s/he is well
   s/he is well

2. vyváděli tam všichni o Karlovi nemluvě
   were-frolicking there all about Charles not-mentioning
   they were frolicking all there, not to mention Charles
3. Rules of annotation

2.5.7.3. Adverbial expressed by an adverb phraseologism

In 3.6.6. Collocations, phraseologisms (phrasemes) we describe how collocations are to be represented and what is regarded as a collocation in our conception. Since most of the collocations fulfil functions of adverbials, this phenomenon is dealt with here as well.

The last word (from the point of view of word-order) of a collocation becomes its “representative” and as such it is assigned a function Adv. The remaining words depend on it and obtain a function AuxY.

prošel jsem Žižkov křížem
I passed through Žižkov crisscrossing it

2.5.7.4. Adverbial expressed by an infinitive

As a rule, the infinitive expresses condition. In the protoypical case, it is separated by a comma and then it is regarded as parenthesis with a function Adv_Pa (see 3.5.4. A syntactically incorporated sentence part with <afun>_Pa).

nepřežil nás by nepřežil
not-to-be us he would not-survived
but for/if it were not for us he wouldn’t survive

Within this category also the expression of Adv by a ‘discrete’ participle (příčestí nespojité) belongs. This, too, is usually separated by commas and therefore it is
3. Rules of annotation

regarded as parenthesis (Adv_Pa - ex. (2)). The boundary between a discrete adverbial and an incomplete (parenthetic) clause with an elided copula is fuzzy. The latter case is described in 3.5.3. An independent sentential form (containing a predicate) Pred_Pa: e.g. the sentence Před smrtí, neznámo proč, si koupil tramvajenku - (Shortly) before his death, for reasons unknown, he bought a tram pass.

1. on je mírně řečeno trouba
   he is mildly said blockhead
   he is, to put it mildly, a blockhead

2. po pravdě řečeno, neumím to
   for truth said I-am-no-good it
   to tell the truth, I am no good at it
2.5.7.5. Adverbial expressed by a subordinate clause

pokud budu živ, nepůjdu tam
as-long-as I-will-be alive I-shall-not-go there

2.5.7.6. Adverbial expressed by a clause (or a group) with conjunctions jak(o) - as, než(li) - than

A complete subordinate clause (with a verb) following the above conjunctions constitutes an Adv. A sentence member constitutes Adv only if it pertains in a close manner to the node placed immediately above the conjunction - it belongs to the same kind, which is why it could occur in the sentence in place of what it modifies (lépe než dobře - better than well, více než pět - more than five, široký jako vysoký - as wide as high). In other cases (zdravý jako ryba - as sound as a fish/bell) it represents an ellipsis (he is as sound as the fish/bell is sound) and the afun ExD is used.

This problem is dealt with in detail in 3.6.9. Phrases of comparison with conjunctions jako (as), než (than). The use of afun ExD is specified in 3.1.3.3. Ellipsis of predicate in clauses introduced by conjunctions jak(o) (like), než(li) (than).

1.

Bohouš je zdravý jako rychlý
Bohouš is sound as quick
Bohouš is as sound as quick
### 3. Rules of annotation

2. **zavěsil to níž než nad křeslo**
   he-hanged it lower than over *armchair*

#### 3.2.5.8. Kinds of adverbials according to meaning

The kinds of adverbials:

1. place
2. time
3. manner
   - manner proper
   - measure
   - means
   - respect
4. causality
   - cause
   - consequence
   - purpose
   - condition
   - concession
5. special kinds
   - inheritance
3. Rules of annotation

2.5.8.1. Adverbial of place

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

   accusative:

   jsi *hodinu cesty odtud*
   you-are *one-hour’s ride from-there*

   instrumental:

   a) prošli *chodbou*
      they-passed *corridor-Instr*

   b) *sálem zněl smích*
      *hall-Instr sounded laughter*
      *the hall resounded with laughter*

   c) *mistr se rozhlédl dílnou*
      *foreman Refl took-a-look workshop-Instr*

   prepositional cases:

   FF stojí proti Mánesovu mostu
   FF is-situated opposite Mánes *Bridge*

2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb

   nevlídně se dívala *kolem*
   unkindly *Refl she-was-looking around*

3. Adverbial expressed by a subordinate clause

   jen tam je láška, kde *panuje přátelství*
   only there is love where *prevails* friendship
   *love only resides where friendship prevails*
3. Rules of annotation

2.5.8.2. Adverbial of time

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

   
   **genitive:**

   přijel tam roku 1918
   he-arrived there *in-year* 1918

   **accusative:**

   poslední dobu byla podivná
   recent *time* she-has-been strange
   *she has been behaving strangely of late*

   **instrumental:**

   chvílemi vyběhla na pavláčku
   *times-Instr* she-appeared on gallery
   *time and again she appeared on the gallery*

   **prepositional cases:**

   bylo to na počátku léta
   was it at *beginning* of-summer

   A list of possible Czech prepositions in such constructions: *do, během, k, kolem, koncem, mezi, na, o, ob, od, okolo, po, pod, pro, před, přes, při, skrze, uprostřed, v, za.*

2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb

   včera dosáhl cíle
   *yesterday* he-reached goal

3. Adverbial expressed by a subordinate clause

   a) otec zemřel, když šlo chlapci na 11. rok
      father died when *it-got* boy-Dat on 11th year
      *father died when the boy was getting on his 11th year*

   b) učil se, zatímco Vojta spal
      he-was-learning Refl. while Vojta *was-sleeping*
3. Rules of annotation

A list of possible conjunctions in such constructions: když, až, zatímco, mezitímco, pokud, dokud, jakmile, jak, sotva(že), leda(že), kdykoli, než.

2.5.8.3. Adverbial of manner

Manner can be expressed directly, by comparison and by effect.

Directly:

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

   instrumental:

   a) Vašek se na něho díval úkosem
      Vašek Refl at him looked askance

   b) romány se rodily závratnou rychlostí
      novels Refl were-born extreme speed-Instr
      novels were born with the speed of a lightning

   c) šli zástupem
      they-walked in-column-Instr

   d) půjdeme procházkou
      we-shall-go walk-Instr
      we shall take a walk there

   e) zuřila zlobou
      she-was-raging hatred-Instr

   prepositional cases:

   a) přišli všichni kromě něho
      arrived all besides him
      all arrived but for him

   b) Karel jel s Pavlem
      Charles drove with Paul
3. Rules of annotation

c) vytrhnl jej i s kořeny
he-wrenched-out it even with roots
he wrenched it out with roots

d) hledí s úžasem
(s)he-stares with amazement

e) dostavili se všichni včetně učitele
turned-up Refl all including teacher
all turned up including the teacher

2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb

jak se jmenuješ
how Refl you-call
what is your name

3. Adverbial expressed by a subordinate clause

a) rozběhl se, jak měl ve zvyku
he-started-running Refl as he-had in custom
he started running as was his custom

b) odešla, aniž mu odpověděla
she-went-off without him she-answered
she went off without answering him

Comparison:

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

instrumental:

nespokojenost vzplane požárem
dissatisfaction will-flare-up conflagration-Inst

prepositional cases:

vypadá proti své choti dost nepatrně
s/he-looks against his wife rather insignificant
he looks rather insignificant compared with his wife
3. Rules of annotation

A list possible Czech prepositions in these constructions: proti, oproti, na rozdíl od, ve srovnání s

2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb

mužsky se zamračil
in-manlike-way he-frowned
he frowned in a manlike way

3. Adverbial expressed by a clause (or a group) with conjunctions jak(o) - as, než(li) - than

jak se usnesli, tak vykonali
as they-had-decided, so they-carried-out
as they had decided, they carried out

Effect:

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

prepositional cases:

velbloud k naší lítosti odklusal
camel to our regret trotted-away
to our regret the camel trotted away

2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb

Pavel hanebně prohrál
Paul shamefully lost

3. Adverbial expressed by a subordinate clause

mám ruce ztuhlé tak, že prsty nenarovnám
I-have hands stiff so that fingers I-not-straighten
my hands have gone so stiff that I cannot straighten my fingers
3. Rules of annotation

2.5.8.4. Adverbial of measure

Measure can be expressed directly, by comparison, effect, restriction or by difference.

Directly:

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

   accusative:

   kroupa vážila půl kilo
   hailstone weighed half kilo-Acc

   (the case is accusative with numerical data - see 3.6.3. Expression with numerals, figures in different functions)

   prepositional cases:

   a) vypil nápoj až do dna
      he-drained drink down to bottom
      he drained the potion down to the bottom

   b) bylo nás ke stu
      it-was us towards one-hundred
      there was towards one hundred of us

2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb

   a) ještě větší jízlivost
      still greater malice

   b) pokoj otevřený dokořán
      room open wide

   c) byl silně udýchán
      he-was rather breathless

   d) rozkousl je napolo nevědomky
      he-bit-apart them half unawares

   e) kráčel nepříliš ochotně
      he-was-walking not-very willingly
3. Rules of annotation

f) kymácím se docela vzadu
   I-am-teetering refl quite at-the-rear

g) jsem schopen nanejvýš ironie
   I-am capable-of at-most irony
   irony is the most I am capable of

h) to činí úhrnem 100 Kč
   this makes in-total 100 Kč

3. Adverbial expressed by an adverb phraseologism

   čerta starého mi na ní záleží
   devil-Acc old me about her it-is-of-importance
   I don’t give a damn about her

Comparison:

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

   genitive:

   jitro je rozumnější večera
   morning is more-clever evening-Gen
   you should consult your pillow

   instrumental:

   krev se řinula proudem
   blood refl flowed streams-Instr

   prepositional cases:

   bohatství snů roste úměrně s množstvím pocitů
   abundance of-dreams grows in-proportion with quantity of-feelings

   A list of possible Czech prepositions in these constructions: proti, nad, od, s, úměrně s

2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb

   ženská si spíš pomůže
   woman refl more-likely helps
   a woman is more likely to take care for herself
3. Rules of annotation

3. Adverbial expressed by a subordinate clause

čím krásnější je sen, tím bolestnější bude procitnutí
the more-beautiful is dream, the more-painful will-be awakening
the more beautiful the dream, the more painful the awakening

4. Adverbial expressed by a clause (or a group) with conjunctions jak(o) - as, než(li) - than

jak bláznivě ji měl rád, tak bláznivě žárlil
as foolishly her he-had loved so foolishly he-was-jealous
as foolishly as he loved her, so foolishly he was jealous of her

Effect:

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

prepositional cases:

nenáviděla ji na smrt
she-hated her to death

A list of possible Czech prepositions in these constructions: (až) do, (až) k, (až) na

2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb

vypadala nepopsatelně vábně
she-looked undescribably inviting

3. Adverbial expressed by an infinitive

stromy jsou jako košt'ata, jen rozpučet
trees are like besoms, just-about to-flourish

4. Adverbial expressed by a subordinate clause

a) nejsem tak nepřející, abych to vypil
I-am-not so envious that it I-drank-up
I am not so envious to drink it up

b) chrám přeplněný tak, až lidé omdlévali
temple overcrowded so that people were-fainting
3. Rules of annotation

c) tak ho pokousali, že zemřel
they him bited that he-died
they bited him in such a way that he died

Restriction:

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

   prepositional cases:

   zapomněla všechno kromě rumu
   she-forgot everything except rum
   she forgot everything but for rum

   A list of possible Czech prepositions in these constructions: kromě, vyjma, s výjimkou, mimo, (až) na

Difference:

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

   prepositional cases:

   radost rodičů je větší o radost dětí
   delight of-parents is greater by delight of-children
   the parents’ delight increases by the delight of their children

2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb

   daleko upřímnější sjednocení
   by-far more-sincere union
2.5.8.5. Adverbial of means

Means can be represented by aid or measure.

Aid:

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

  instrumental:

  cvrnkali sklenkami o mísy
   they were clinking glasses against bowls
   they were clinking their glasses against the bowls

Note

with verbs in passive voice the means (aid) becomes actor, i.e., Obj (byl přivítán předsedou - he was welcomed by the chairman)

prepositional cases:

a) přísahala na kříž
   she swore on cross

b) držel koně na oprati
   he kept horses on reins

c) po hlavě chodit neumím
   on head walk I can’t

d) dřela za mírku brambor
   she drudged for small-bowl of potatoes
   she used to drudge for a small bowl of potatoes

A list of possible Czech prepositions: na, o, po, skrze, v, za, pomocí, prostřednictvím

2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb

vyjádřil to hudebně
he expressed it musically
3. Rules of annotation

3. Adverbial expressed by a subordinate clause

život můžeme zkoumat jen tak, že zkoumáme živou hmotu
life we-can examine only so that we-examine living matter
we can examine life only by examining living matter

Measure:

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

instrumental:

mám právem nárok na dovolenou
I-have rightly claim for leave
I make a rightful claim for a leave

prepositional cases:

a) ústav chce podle ředitele přežít
institute wants according-to director to-survive
according to the director the institute wants to survive

b) výkon se snižuje úměrně podmínkám
performance Refl scales-down proportionally-to conditions
the performance scales down corresponding to conditions

A list of possible Czech prepositions in these constructions: podle, dle, po, z, úměrně, na podkladě, na základě, v souhlasu s, v souladu s, soudě dle.

2.5.8.6. Adverbial of respect

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

instrumental:

a) zevnějškem se podobal Pavlovi
by-external-appearance-Instr Refl he-resembled Paul
3. Rules of annotation

b) plemena příbuzná jazykem
   races cognate in-language-Instr

c) dědeček byl povoláním rybář
   grandfather was by-profession-Instr fisherman

This construction occurs with such verbs as rovnat se, různit se, lišit se, přizpůsobit se (equal, differ, differentiate, adapt), etc., with relative adjectives and with the word groups být (stávat se) něčím, (nějakým) - be (become) st.(some)

prepositional cases:

a) sbor je (co) do počtu slabý
   chorus is (as) to numbers scant
   as to numbers the chorus is scant

b) byla k němu bezcitná
   she-was to him heartless

c) tempo je pro nás rychlé
   speed is for us high
   the speed is too high for us

d) s podnájemníky neměla štěstí
   with tenants she-had-not luck
   she had bad luck with her tenants

e) všechno u mne večerem počíná
   all by me evening-Instr begins
   all begins by evening with me

f) ochabl ve své činnosti
   he-grew-feeble in his activity

g) upravíme předpis se zřetelem na noční přepady
   we-shall-adjust regulation with regard to night assaults
   we shall adjust the regulation with a view to the nocturnal assaults

A list of possible Czech prepositions: (co) do, k, na, naproti, od, oproti, pro, proti, při, s, stran, u, v, vůči, ohledně, z hlediska, vzhledem k, vzhledem na, se zřetelem na, v souhlase s, v souvislosti s, ve spojitosti s, ve srovnání s
3. Rules of annotation

2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb

   a) eský mácká strava je biologicky hodnotná
      Eskimo food is biologically rich

   b) je to v podstatě lež
      is it in essence lie

   c) Jinak tam bylo pěkně
      otherwise there it was nice

3. Adverbial expressed by an infinitive

   sociologicky vzato, divadlo je soubor lidí
   sociologically taken, theatre is ensemble of people
   from the sociological point of view, the theatre is an ensemble of people

4. Adverbial expressed by a subordinate clause

   co ho pamatuji, byl spořádaný člověk
   as him I remember he was decent man
   as far as I remember him, he was a decent man

   Conjunctions pokud and co (pokud jde o, pokud se týče) - as far as (... is concerned) are used.

2.5.8.7. Adverbial of cause

This adverbial concerns expression of stimuli, motives or causes of states and activities, obstacles or symptoms on the basis of which we infer that some action takes place.

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

   accusative:

   co bych se bála
   what.Acc I should Refl be afraid
   why should I be afraid

   instrumental:
3. Rules of annotation

a) rozplývá se štěstím
   he-melts Refl happiness-Instr
   he melts with tears of happiness

b) nohy mu slabostí klesaly
   legs him weakness-Instr were-failing
   his legs were failing owing to weakness

prepositional cases:

a) na mou žádost přijde
   at my request he-is-coming

b) muži pili na zlost
   men were-drinking out-of spite

c) zemřel na cirhosu
   he-died of cirrhosis

d) nenaříká pro bolest
   he-doesn’t-moan with pain

e) pro hru zapomínáš na čas
   for-the-sake-of play you-forget on time

f) zavřeli ho pro potulku
   they-arrested him for vagrancy

g) mlčeli ze strachu
   they-remained-silent for fear

h) děkuji za ohňátí
   thanks for letting-me-warm-up

i) strnul nad tou drzostí
   he-stiffened at that impudence

j) díky péči manželky nezemřel
   thanks care of-wife he-did-not-die
   he did not die owing to his wife’s care
3. Rules of annotation

A list of possible Czech prepositions: na, pro, z, za, k, od, nad, po, při, skrz, v, u, následkem, v důsledku, dík (díky), kvůli, za příčinou, vzhledem k.

2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb

a) proč to děláš
why it you-do
why do you do it

b) fotografování je z důvodů vojenských zakázáno
photographing is for reasons military forbidden
photographing is forbidden for military reasons

3. Adverbial expressed by a subordinate clause

je nejlepší, protože je nejhodnější
s/he-is best because s/he-is most-well-behaved

A list of possible Czech conjunctions: jak, jelikož, když (coll.), poněvadž, protože, (proto)že.

2.5.8.8. Adverbial of consequence

Consequential connection is usually expressed by parataxis (e.g., v žaludku mu kručelo, proto se najedl (his stomach was rumbling, therefore he ate his fill) or v hlavě mu zvonilo, pročez se napil (there was a buzz in his head, which is why he downed a drink)). These cases are represented as coordination (see 3.4.1. Coordination (sentential, of sentence parts) Coord, <afun> _Co).

1. Adverbial expressed by a subordinate clause

správce vám poradí, takže nezabloudíte
keeper you will-advice so-that you-will-not-lose-way
the keeper will advise you, so that you do not lose your way

Hypotactical expression of consequence is less frequent; the conjunction takže (so that) is used.
3. Rules of annotation

2.5.8.9. Adverbial of purpose

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

prepositional cases:

a) podněcoval je k hledání
   he-instigated them to search

b) krb je na okrasu
   hearth is for show

c) přispěchal na pomoc
   he-hurried to assistance
   he hurried to assist

d) srdce bilo na poplach
   heart beat to alarm

e) byl jsem lidem pro smích
   I-was Aux people-Dat for laugh
   I became a laughingstock for the people

f) natáhl se pro čepici
   he-reached-out Refl for cap

g) svrchník si vem pro jistotu také
   overcoat Refl take for certainty as-well
   as a provision take the overcoat as well

h) pobízí matku do klusu
   he-urges mother to trotting
   he is urging mother to trot

i) od toho jsou chytréjší lidé
   for that are smarter people
   leave that to the smarter people

j) vzdal se trůnu ve prospěch své ženy
   he-renounced Refl throne in favour of-his wife
3. Rules of annotation

k) položil bych za tebe život
I’d-lay-down Aux for you life
I’d lay down my life for you

l) honil se za zvěří
he-hunted Refl for game

A list of possible Czech prepositions: k, na, pro, do, od, v, za, kvůli, za příčinou, v zájmu, za účelem

2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb

k) tomu účelu dostávám blok
to that purpose I-get note-book
I get a note-book for this purpose

3. Adverbial expressed by an infinitive

a) jdou slavit 1.máj
they-are-going to-celebrate May-Day

b) byl jsem se tam podívat
I-was Aux Refl there to-have-a-look
I went there to have a look

c) poslali ho studovat
they-sent him to-study

4. Adverbial expressed by a subordinate clause

a) od toho byla herečka, aby zachovala klid
for that she-was actress that she-kept quiet
it was her nature of an actress to remain composed

b) poslouchá pozorně jen aby se zavděčil
he-listens carefully just that he-obliged
he listens carefully just to oblige

b) poslouchá pozorně jen aby se zavděčil
he-listens carefully just that he-obliged
he listens carefully just to oblige

b) poslouchá pozorně jen aby se zavděčil
he-listens carefully just that he-obliged
he listens carefully just to oblige

b) poslouchá pozorně jen aby se zavděčil
he-listens carefully just that he-obliged
he listens carefully just to oblige

b) poslouchá pozorně jen aby se zavděčil
he-listens carefully just that he-obliged
he listens carefully just to oblige
3. Rules of annotation

d) pospěšme si, at’ nás nehledá
let-us-hurry-up Refl lest us s/he-not-search
let us hurry up lest he should be searching for us

2.5.8.10. Adverbial of condition

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

prepositional cases:

a) při náležité opatrnosti se nic nestane
with due caution Refl nothing will-not-happen
with due caution nothing will happen

b) za horka stoupá nárok na tekutiny
in hot-weather increases demand for liquids
in hot weather the demands for liquids increase

c) bez pokory není smíru
without humbleness is-not peace
there is no peace without humbleness

d) vydám to jen na potvrzení
I-shall-surrender it only against receipt
I shall surrender it against a receipt only

e) podle možnosti má být provedena kontrola
according-to possibility should be carried-out check
according to what is possible a check is to be carried out

f) prohlédneme si s vaším dovolením továrnu
we-will-look-at Refl with your permission factory
with your permission we are going to have a look at the factory

2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb

obvykle po obědě spává
usually after lunch he-would-sleep
usually he would sleep after lunch
3. Rules of annotation

Some adverbials (*prostě, zkrátka* - put simply, in short) represent rather a degraded parenthesis; they are marked as $\mathcal{AuxY}$.

3. Adverbial expressed by an infinitive

a) *mluveno v duchu typologie je příslušníkem avantgardy*
spoken in spirit of-typology he-is member of-avantgarde

b) *jde jim to těžko, soudíc podle vzdychnání*
is for-them it hard judged by sighing

b) *být vámi, tak tam nejdu*
to-be you so there I-wouldn’t-go

4. Adverbial expressed by a subordinate clause

a) *jestli tomuhle říkáš oddechnout, to tedy promíň*
if this you-call to-rest, then thus you-pardon

b) *kdyby měl aspoň volno, všechno by bylo snadné*
if he-had at-least free-day, all would be easy

A list of possible Czech conjunctions: *-li, jestli(že), jak, pakli(že), když, pokud, kdyby, když(by).*
3. Rules of annotation

2.5.8.11. Adverbial of concession

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

prepositional cases:

a) nemohla přes dobré výchování zadržet úsměv
   she-could-not despite good breeding suppress smile
   despite her good breeding she could not suppress a smile

b) při vši opatrnosti dost hrnců potloukla
   with all care many pots she-broke
   for all the care she broke quite a number of the pots

A list of possible Czech prepositions: přes, při, (i) v, mimo, proti, vzdor, navzdory.

2. Adverbial expressed by a subordinate clause

a) třeba to nebyla pravda, přece to tvrdí
   even-if it weren’t true all-the-same it he-insists
   even if it weren’t true, he insists on it all the same

b) i když jsi ztratila muže, aspoň
   even when you-lost husband at-least
   for-a-while Aux were happy
   although you have lost your husband, at least you were happy for a while

c) ať si prší, ať je mráz, panenka se směje
   let let-rains let is frost doll smiles
   may it rain, may it freeze, the doll keeps smiling

d) necht’ třeba běsí viděla jsem, doufám
   let even devils I-saw Aux I-hope
   even if I might have seen devils, I do hope

A list of possible Czech conjunctions: třebaže, ač, ačkoliv, třeba (i), třebas, třebaže, jak, jakkoliv, přestože, (přesto)že, (i) když, (ani) když, byt’ (i), at’, necht’, aniž.
3. Rules of annotation

2.5.8.12. Adverbial of inheritance

Inheritance represents a special kind of Adv, which can be expressed by the way exemplified below only (a construction od dědečka mu zbyly knihy - from the grandfather books have been left for him - will be marked as Obj).

1. Adverbial expressed by means of a noun

prepositional cases:

po tatínkovi mu zbyla řádka knih
after father him remained a-number-of books
after father a number of books remained for him

3.2.6. Complement (verbal attribute) Atv, AtvV

3.2.6.1. INFO ATV

In the part 3.2.6.2. Definition of complement in defining complement we point out that our approach to this category is more restricted than that of Šmilauer’s conception: as complement we regard only what he describes as complement not participating in government (doplněk nevazebný).

Since complement is traditionally described as depending on two members at the same time, we have to solve the question of where to suspend it in the tree; this problem is dealt with in the part 3.2.6.3. Getting the complement suspended. Then we have to bring to the reader’s attention that complement can easily be mistaken for some other sentence members. To avoid such mistakes, some instances are presented in the part 3.2.6.4. Misinterpretation of complement; in the part 3.2.6.5. Criteria for diagnosing the complement, criterions on which the decisions in this respect are to be based are formulated.

In the part 3.2.6.6. Expressing the complement, possibilities in expressing complement will be shown. A complement can be expressed by a non-agreeing noun 2.6.6.1. Complement expressed by a non-agreeing noun, a nominal adjective 2.6.6.2. Complement expressed by adjective in nominal form, compound 2.6.6.3. Complement expressed by an adjective in compound form or deverbative 2.6.6.4. Complement expressed by a deverbative adjective, a pronoun or a numeral 2.6.6.5. Complement expressed by an adjectival pronoun or a numeral, and it can also be introduced by the conjunction jako 2.6.6.6. Complement introduced by the conjunction jako. As complements also transgressive constructions are regarded 2.6.6.7. Complement expressed by a transgressive, a special but separate case
3. Rules of annotation

of which are constructions of the type *hlavu skloněnou* (having head inclined) and the so-called French complements where the trangressive is elided 2.6.6.8. Complement with elided transgressive. Further possibilities are subordinate clauses 2.6.6.9. Complement expressed by a subordinate sentence and infinitives 2.6.6.10. Complement expressed by infinitive.

One of the governing elements of a complement is, as a rule, a verb (predicate), which fact will be presupposed through the whole section. Exceptionally, however, situations can take place where this member is transformed into some other. We shall deal with them in the concluding part 3.2.6.7. Complement with a transformed predicate.

### 3.2.6.2. Definition of complement

In our conception only Šmilauer’s determining complement (not participating in rection) is regarded as complement (Atv, AtvV), while the governed complement (*doplňek doplňující* - completing, rectional) is diagnosed as object (Obj - see the part 3.2.4.6. Object after copulas and semi-copulas).

1. chlapec ležel nenocen
   boy lay ill - Atv

2. viděl ho nemocného
   he-saw him ill - Atv

3. stal se lékařem
   he-became Refl physician - Obj

4. označil úvahy za předčasné
   he-declared considerations as premature - Obj
3. Rules of annotation

3.2.6.3. Getting the complement suspended

For technical reasons the complement is suspended on that of its “governing” members which is not a verb (i.e., on a noun or adjective), if, of course, such a member is present in the sentence. This is because this member determines the agreement. The complement obtains the function $A_{t v}$ from which the complement’s dependence on the verb follows.

The complement with afun $A_{t v}$ is emphasized.

1.

my jsme přišli rádi
we Aux came glad
we were glad to come

2.

peníze má uloženy
money he-has deposited
he has put the money on a deposit

If, however, there is no second member in the sentence (it is either completely absent or it has been elided), the complement gets suspended on the verb (predicate) and it obtains the function $A_{t vV}$.

1.

má uvařeno
she-has cooked
she has done cooking
3. Rules of annotation

3.2.6.4. Misinterpretation of complement

The complement should not be mistaken for other kinds of sentence members, e.g., for nominal predicate (which might happen in contexts such as ex. (1)) or adverbial (ex. (3)).

1. pivo je dobré studené
   beer is good cold
   beer is good served cold

2. doktor povstává rozrušený
   doctor is-rising upset
3. Rules of annotation

3. vojsko poraženo ustoupilo rychle ke Skalici
   troops defeated retreated quickly towards Skalice
   the troops defeated retreated in haste towards Skalice

It can even happen that a complement gets suspended on a copula (být) by the side of the nominal part of the predicate (Pnom). If, as the case may be, the second governing member (here the subject) is absent, the above mentioned rule is to be applied - the complement gets suspended on the verb (the copula, in this case) and obtains AtvV.

je celý rozchvělý
he-is all agitated

3.2.6.5. Criteria for diagnosing the complement

1. If an expression jako (meaning: as, playing the part of, etc.) occurs in a sentence (not being the case of a comparison described in 3.6.9. Phrases of comparison with conjunctions jako (as), než (than)) and, at the same time, it is not governed by the valency of a verb (in such a case it would be an object - see the part 3.2.6.2. Definition of complement), we shall assign to this conjunctive expression the function AuxY and to the pertinent expression AtvV (AtvV).
3. Rules of annotation

Honza mluvil jako předseda
Johny spoke as chairman
Johny held a speech as the chairman

2. If the word jako can be supplied to the sentence and the conditions stated in paragraph (1) are fulfilled, the assigned afun is complement (Atv), too.

a) pěšinky udržoval čisté
paths he-kept clean
he kept the paths clean

b) budu tě fotografovat nepřipravenou
I'll you take-a-snap-of unawares
I'll take a snap of you unawares

3. a) There is agreement with Sb, Obj or other member and the verb has no valency.

i) chlapec chodí bos
boy goes barefoot

ii) viděl ho nemocného
he-saw him ill
3. Rules of annotation

iii) do divadla chodím jen do loutkového
to theatre I-go only to puppet
(as to) theatre I (don’t) go but to the puppet

iv)

[predstavme si vsechny skvrny odstraneny]
let-us-imagine Refl all stains removed

b) Semantic criteria: verbs such as depict, represent, photograph, preserve, keep, maintain, let;... (as he is) sitting.

i) [fotografoval te, jak sedis]
he-took-a-snap you as you-sit
he took a snap of you sitting

ii) [udrzoval pesinky, ciste]
paths he-kept clean
he kept the paths clean

4. The type máme uvařeno (we have finished cooking), máme plno (we have our place full) (AtvV).
3.2.6.6. Expressing the complement

2.6.6.1. Complement expressed by a non-agreeing noun

seděl modelem
he-sat model-Instr
he sat for a model

A non-agreeing noun can occur as a complement in fixed constructions of the type:

1. sedět modelem
to-sit model-Instr (as a model)

2. dostat darem
to-get present-Instr
be presented with st., get st. as a present

or in poetic sayings like
3. Rules of annotation

žebrákem půjdeš světem
beggar-Instr you-will-go through-world
you’ll go begging through the world (as a beggar)

Similarly it can be expressed by a prepositional case:

král slíbil Honzovi svou dceru za ženu
king promised Johny his daughter as wife

2.6.6.2. Complement expressed by adjective in nominal form

1. otčím stojí bled uprostřed domu
   stepfather stands pale in-the-middle of-house

2. zemřel dědeček, stár 79 let
   died grandfather old 79 years
   grandfather died, 79 years old

3. udělal to nerad
   he-did it unwillingly

4. ty jsi ještě jakživa nikde nebyla
   you Aux yet in-your-life never were-not
   you have never been anywhere in your life

5. lidé, zapsáni v pořadnících, čekají
   people written in waiting-lists are-waiting
   the people, entered in waiting lists, are waiting
3. Rules of annotation

2.6.6.3. Complement expressed by an adjective in compound form

1.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{rudý} & \quad \text{víinem} \\
\text{Obj} & \quad \text{Adv} \\
\text{rovnováhy} & \quad \text{pozbyl} \\
\text{At} & \quad ???
\end{align*}
\]

\text{rudý víinem pozbyl rovnováhy}
\text{red from-wine he-lost balance}
\text{red-faced from wine he lost his balance}

2. boty mi vyhovují kotníčkové
do me fit booties
\text{shoes I find comfortable are booties}

3. jednotka zůstala bezbranná
\text{unit remained defenceless}

2.6.6.4. Complement expressed by a deverbative adjective

1. tatínek vešel zúřící radostí
\text{father entered beaming with-joy}

2. děti stály ztichlé
\text{children stood silent}

3. přicházel kryt smrčím
\text{he-was-coming covered by-spruces}
\text{he was coming covered behind spruces}

4.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{neotrkaný} & \quad \text{přišel} \\
\text{At} & \quad ??? \\
\text{Franta} & \quad \text{na} \\
\text{Sb} & \quad \text{AuxP} \\
\text{Žižkov} & \quad \text{Adv}
\end{align*}
\]

\text{neotrkaný přišel Franta na Žižkov}
\text{an-utter-greenhorn came Frank to Žižkov}
\text{Frank came to Žižkov an utter greenhorn}
2.6.6.5. Complement expressed by an adjectival pronoun or a numeral

As a complement such words are regarded as *jediný* (the only), *každý* (each, every), *první* (first), *všechen* (all), *samojediný* (sole), *samotný* (alone), and nominal forms *růd* (glad), *sám*, *samoten* (alone) in non-attributive positions unless they represent *Pnom* after a copula (see also part 3.2.6.5. Criteria for diagnosing the complement sub 5). All the three positions of the word *sama* are illustrated by ex. (6). The sentence in this example is understood as meaning *the woman that was alone was the only one that was solitary*.

Complements can be cumulated (ex. (7))

1. **tážal se sám sebe**
   he-asked *Ref1 alone* himself
   *he asked himself*

2. **leželi sami dva**
   they-were-lying *alone two*
   *they were lying the two alone*

3. **vesta mi stačí jedna**
   waistcoat me is-enough *one*
   *one waistcoat is enough for me*

4. **zbyl jí čas na sebe samu**
   left her time for herself *alone*
   *she had time left for herself*
3. Rules of annotation

5.

veselost sama o sobě je příčněná
cheerfulness alone in itself is adequate
cheerfulness in itself is adequate

6.

sama žena byla sama
single woman was the-only-one alone
the single woman was the only one alone

7.

Čech se vydal sám jediný na Říp
Čech set out alone the-only-one for Říp
Čech set out for Říp the only one alone

Mind phraseologized constructions as:
3. Rules of annotation

1. 

bariéra bude růst jedna za druhou  
barriers will grow one after another

2. 

přátelé se vracívají každý zvlášť  
friends would-be-returning each separately

2.6.6.6. Complement introduced by the conjunction *jako*

The complement expressed by a noun or adjective can also be introduced by conjunctions *jako, jakožto* - as (see part 3.2.6.5. Criteria for diagnosing the complement). These conjunctions get suspended directly on the complement and obtain a fun *AuxX* (see also part 2.7.7.4. The conjunction *jako* introducing complement or object).

There can be more complement adjectives following one conjunction (exx. (6), (7)). This conjunction then gets suspended on the first of these complements while the second gets suspended alongside without any conjunction.
3. Rules of annotation

1. mluví o krystaloch jako o individuích
   he-speaks about crystals as about individuals

2. některý z členů by mohl dotazník potvrdit jako svědek
   one of members Aux could form verify as witness
   one of the members could verify the form as a witness

3. vezmeme kufrý se sebou jako zavazadla
   we-take bags with us as luggage

4. miloval Nováka jako přítele
   he-loved Novák as friend

5. odmítá debatu jako druhotnou
   he-refuses debate as secondary

6. chápe vývoj jako jediný správný
   he-regards development as the-only-one correct
3. Rules of annotation

7. mluví o vývoji jako o jediném správném
he-speaks of development as of the-only-one correct

2.6.6.7. Complement expressed by a transgressive

Transgressives fulfil the function of complement in the sentence. An exception is represented by absolute (incontinuous) transgressive constructions neither in agreement nor having subject in common with the verb. They are regarded as adverbials and marked Adv. (See the part 2.5.7.2. Adverbial expressed by an adverb.)

The complement expressed by a transgressive is, as a rule, separated by commas. Since this is a systemic phenomenon, we do not regard this case as parenthesis. It would be assigned function Atv_Pa only if it were separated more distinctly (e.g., by parentheses). This represents one of the exceptions dealt with in 3.5.4. A syntactically incorporated sentence part with <afun>_Pa.

1. vzdálil se, těžce pohybuje nohama
he-walked-away refl heavily moving legs
2.6.6.8. Complement with elided transgressive

The construction *Jan vstoupil hlavu skloněnou/skloněnu* (John entered, his head inclined) expresses dependence on the action (how did he enter?) and, at the same time, traditionally it is understood to depend on the name *Jan*, due to its agreement with this noun. Šmilauer speaks about “absolute accusative of property” pointing out that here the transgressive (*maj, majíc, majíce* - having) is elided, and classes these constructions with complement. We, however, miss an element that would make it possible to render exactly syntactic relations in the tree (the absent transgressive). Therefore we describe this type with the aid of afun *ExD* (see 3.3.1. Ellipsis *ExD, ExD_Co*).

The word *skloněnou* (inclined) represents a classical complement (*Atv*) to the member *hlava* (head) and to the missing transgressive according to the part 2.6.6.4. Complement expressed by a deverbative adjective.

*Emphasis* denotes the node with afun *ExD*, which remained after the complement was gone.
3. Rules of annotation

Jan vstoupil hlavu skloněnou
John entered head inclined

Cases of the so-called French complement can be dealt with in this connection, too, where, for the most part, an ellipsis of a transgressive takes place. The remaining noun then obtains afun ExD as well.

1. seděl na zápraží, tichá hromádka neštěstí
he was sitting on porch, silent heap of misery
he was sitting in front of the porch, a silent picture of misery

2. také ji, babičku, malé ještě děvče, mučili
also her grandmother small still girl they-tortured
they were torturing her too, the grandmother, still a little girl
3. Rules of annotation

rodák z Moravy, strávil strýc celý život v Praze
a native of Moravia, uncle spent all his life in Prague

2.6.6.9. Complement expressed by a subordinate sentence

Following such content (autosemantic) verbs as pozorovat (observe), vidět (see), zahlédnout (catch sight of), slyšet (hear), přistihnout (catch), potkat (meet), představit si (imagine), znázorňovat (depict).

činil žalostný dojem, jak tu stál
he-made pitiful impression, as here he-was-standing
he made a pitiful impression, as he was standing here
2.6.6.10. Complement expressed by infinitive

This concerns the so-called “Slavonic accusative with infinitive” after verbs like vidět (see), spatřit (see, perceive), slyšet (hear), cítit (feel); nechat (let).

An aid:

"spatřila Vaška (jak?) vcházejícího do dveří" - spatřila → vcházejícího, 
Vaška → vcházejícího (she saw Vašek enter(ing) the door)

spatřila Vaška vcházet do dveří
she-saw Vašek enter to door
3. Rules of annotation

2. Barbara se cítí být zavázána
   Barbara Reflexive feels to-be obliged
   Barbara feels (being) obliged

3.2.6.7. Complement with a transformed predicate

In classical examples complement relates (as an embedded predication) to the verb and to some other nominal sentence member (having a different afun). By means of a transformation (i.e., through another secondary predication) the governing verb or the nominal part of the predicate (Pnom) can be changed into another nominal construction. In such cases (instead of the verb) the result of this transformation (nominalisation) of the predicate becomes the first governing member of the complement.

Such cases, however, will be treated in the same way as the classical dependent complements. This means that the complement gets suspended on the second “governing” (nominal) member and is marked Atv.

On the assumption that the sentence in the first example means That how we imagined the man as he was dying was shocking, the clause as he was dying constitutes the complement relating to the members image and man.
3. Rules of annotation

1. představa muže, jak umírá, byla ořesná
   image of-man as he-dies was shocking
   the image of the man (as he was) dying was shocking

2. houslista, neznámý jako malíř, trpí
   violinist, unknown as painter suffers


3.2.7.1. Subordinating conjunctions AuxC

2.7.1.1. INFO AUXC

In the part 2.7.1.2. Definition of AuxC the information can be found as to where the subordinating conjunctions are to be placed in the tree and which conjunctions belong to this class. Consequently, a list of them has been included. As can be seen, some of the conjunctions consist of two words. The way how and where they are to be suspended in the graph are described in the part 2.7.1.3. Compound (multiple element) subordinating conjunctions. Another idiosyncratic conjunction is
3. Rules of annotation

represented by the suffix *li* annexed with the aid of a hyphen, to be dealt with in the part 2.7.1.4. representation of the conjunction -li.

Some problems concerning the connecting (suspending) of subordinated conjunctional clauses will be touched in 2.7.1.5. attachment of subordinate clauses. The reader gets acquainted with the possibility that a conjunction may depend on a preposition, as well as about divided pairs of words *proto-že* and *přesto-že* (because of, in spite of). At last, in the part 2.7.1.6. An individual sentence member attached by a subordinating conjunction, it is shown that what can depend on a conjunction (i.e., what has been introduced by it) need not represent a whole subordinate clause, but be a mere independent sentence member (without representing an ellipsis handled with the aid of ExD).

### 2.7.1.2. Definition of **AuxC**

(Subordinate) clauses consist of relative and conjunctional sentences. The predicate of a relative clause depends directly on its head included in the higher sentence, and the relative word obtains its function inside its subordinate clause (ex. (2)). In a conjunctional clause, the conjunction, which is assigned as a **AuxC**, is placed as dependent on the head word and the predicate of the clause depends on the conjunction. Thus, the latter becomes the *technically* governing node of the clause (ex. (1)).

```
cítila, jak na ni jdou mdloby
she-felt as on her fall faints
she felt she would go off in a faint
```
There is a number of subordinating conjunctions which we mark as AuxC. They often are ambiguous, being thus able to fulfil other functions as well. E.g., the word co (what/when) obtains AuxC in temporal meaning only (close to the conjunction když (when)), especially when following such referential expressions as poté (after), mezitím, zatím (while), or participating in a “multiple” conjunction jen co (just when).

In spite of the fact that there are also such conjunctions (e.g. aniž (without)) which can function as both subordinating (AuxC) and coordinating (Coord), the great majority of conjunctions belongs to one of the two categories only and must not be confused (for coordinating conjunctions see part 4.1.3.4. Coordinating conjunctions).

**A list of subordinating conjunctions AuxC:**
aby, ač, ačkoli, ačkoliv, aniž, at’, at’ už, až, byť, co, dokud, i kdyby, i když, jak, jakkoli, jakkoliv, jakmile, jako, jelikož, jen co, jestli, jestliže, kdežto, kdyby, kdykoli, kdykoliv, když, leda, ledaže, ledva, ledvaže, -li, mezitímco, necht’, než, nežli, pakli, pakliže, pokud, poněvadž, poté co, protože, přestože, sotva, sotvaže, takže, třeba, třebas, třebaže, zatímco, zda, zdali, že

**2.7.1.3. Compound (multiple element) subordinating conjunctions**

Most of the conjunctions consist of one word only. Nevertheless, there are also two-word conjunctions, which then take two nodes in the tree. To be able to represent them we use the function AuxY. As can be seen from the examples below, we choose one word of the two-word conjunction to take the position of the whole. This will obtain afun AuxC and it will be placed according to the above rules between the word modified by the clause and its predicate. The other word belonging to the conjunction will be suspended from this AuxC and marked by the mentioned afun AuxY. (This function is dealt with in the 3.2.7.7. Parts of multi-word constructions, some particles, decayed parenthesis AuxY, where the part 2.7.7.6. Compound subordinating conjunctions is devoted particularly to subordinating conjunctions).

In the following examples the part with afun AuxC is in **emphasized:**

```plaintext
nevěděla, kdy zmizí
she-did-not-know when she-would-disappear
```
3. Rules of annotation

1. přišli, i když není středa
   they-came even though it-is-not Wednesday

2. 
   \[
   \begin{array}{c}
   \text{dostanu} \\
   \text{sedmu} \\
   \text{kdyby} \\
   \text{čert} \\
   \text{jezdil} \\
   \end{array}
   \]
   I-will-get even if devil on goat would-ride
   \[
   \begin{array}{c}
   \text{na} \\
   \text{koze} \\
   \end{array}
   \]
   I shall get the seven, come hell or high water

3. 
   \[
   \begin{array}{c}
   \text{vyhrajeme} \\
   \text{už} \\
   \text{stane} \\
   \text{se} \\
   \text{cokoli} \\
   \end{array}
   \]
   let now happens whatever we-will-win
   \[
   \begin{array}{c}
   \text{Refl} \\
   \text{Adv} \\
   \text{Sb} \\
   \end{array}
   \]
   whatever may happen, we shall win

4. zařídím to, jen co se usadím
   I-will-manage it as-soon as I-settle-down
   I can manage it as soon as I settle down

2.7.1.4. representation of the conjunction -li

This conjunction is placed as an independent node, as all conjunctions are. The hyphen preceding it obtains auxG and it will depend directly on the node li (according to 2.8.4.8. Punctuation mark with the conjunction -li (hyphen)). The word preceding the hyphen fulfils its current function in the clause. Therefore, if it represents a predicate (ex. (1)), it will depend on the conjunction, if it plays the role
3. Rules of annotation

of another sentence member (ex. (2)), it will depend on the node where it belongs according to the rules of annotation.

1. 

roste-li obvyklou rychlosti, nezmrzne
if-it-grows at-usual speed, it-does-not-freeze-up

2. 

obvyklou-li roste rychlosti, nezmrzne
usual-if it-grows by-speed it-will-not-freeze-up
if the speed of its growth is usual, it will not freeze up

2.7.1.5. attachment of subordinate clauses

If the main clause contains a 'referential word' corresponding to the attached clause, it needn t be quite clear on which node this subordinate clause (i.e., technically, the conjunction) should depend. Generally this problem is dealt with in 3.6.4. Referring words. Here we shall touch on some problems concerning conjunctions.

If the pronoun to (it) accompanies a subordinate clause having the function Atr (according to the rules, part 6.4.1. Referring pronoun to (that)), then the clause (its predicate) depends on to, as shown in the example (1). However, if the pronoun to
3. Rules of annotation

accompanies a subordinate conjunctival clause (perhaps in a prepositional case, e.g. místo toho instead of it), then this pronoun functions as a referential word and is left out (and only the preposition remains in the clause). Then the subordinate clause (technically, the conjunction) can depend directly on this preposition. Its predicate, of course, obtains such an afun which would be assigned to the pronoun to, if it hadn’t been left out. This case is demonstrated in the example (2).

1.

místo toho, aby povstal, seděl nečinně dál
instead of that he got up, he went on sitting inactively

2.

místo aby povstal, seděl nečinně dál
instead of getting up he went on sitting inactively

As has been pointed out in the part 6.4.2. Referring words with adverbial embedded clauses, adverbial references as well as the adverbial clauses referred to by them are placed side by side (provided the case is not that of referential to) in the tree. This holds for groupings proto, že, přesto, že, poté, co, mezitím, co, zatím, co, ..., if they are written separately in the text; on the other hand, one-word conjunctions which were derived from these collocations (protože - because, přestože - in spite of, mezitímco - in the meantime, zatímco - while,...) are handled as simple conjunctions.
3. Rules of annotation

1. nadával proto, že dlouho spali
   he was swearing, because that long they slept
   he was swearing, because they had been sleeping long

2. nadával, přesto, že otevřeli
   he was swearing in spite that they opened
   he was using bad language in spite of their having opened

3. otevřeli poté, co vstali
   they opened after that they got up

2.7.1.6. An individual sentence member attached by a subordinating conjunction

It may happen that a subordinating conjunction doesn’t attach a subordinate clause but just an individual sentence member. This often happens with conjunctions jako and než (as, like, than), this problem being described in detail in 3.6.9. Phrases of comparison with conjunctions jako (as), než (than). However, this can happen also with other conjunctions. A general criterion that can decide whether the case concerns a real sentence member lies in that the attached member cannot be normally
3. Rules of annotation

expanded into a clause - *nothing can be added, completed*, without changing the meaning. If anything could be added, i.e., if in the place following the conjunction a complete clause might originally occur, an ellipsis must be presumed where only some member of the clause remained. This member, therefore, obtains afun $\text{ExD}$ since a predicate is missing as its head.

Real separate sentence members (rather than cases of deletion) attached with the aid of conjunctions (which is why they obtain some current afun, mostly $\text{Adv}$ or $\text{At}$) can be found in the following examples:

1. chytrý, protože nadaný chlapec
   clever since gifted boy

2. mluvili o zajímavém, i když důležitém problému
   they-talked about attractive even though grave problem

3. udělal to moudře, protože potichu
   he-did it prudently because in-silence

4. plodná, byť nudná debata
   fruitful though boring debate
3. Rules of annotation

In other cases ExD will be assigned, since an ellipsis in the clause is assumed:

1. chlapec je chytrý, protože nadaný (= protože je nadaný)
   boy is smart since gifted (= because he-is gifted)

2. voják, protože v uniformě, zašel za roh
   soldier because in uniform turned round corner
   *The soldier, (because) being in uniform, turned round the corner.*

3. voják, ačkoliv jen poručík, zmizel
   soldier though only lieutenant disappeared
   *The soldier, though he was only a lieutenant, disappeared.*

### 3.2.7.2. Prepositions AuxP

#### 2.7.2.1. INFO AUXP

The section dealing with prepositions consists of two parts. The part 2.7.2.2. Representation of prepositions describes how and where the classical prepositions are to be suspended in the tree. Prepositions, however, cannot be limited to the classical ones only - one-word and one-node prepositions. There are also the so-called secondary or pseudo-prepositions, which can consist of more words and take thus more nodes. How these are to be represented can be found in the part 2.7.2.3. Improper prepositions.

#### 2.7.2.2. Representation of prepositions

Prepositions are generally assigned function AuxP. Their position in the tree is above the noun they introduce. They are placed, therefore, where the noun not having any preposition would be suspended, and the noun introduced will depend on the preposition.

Prepositions AuxP are emphasized:
3. Rules of annotation

1. transition from defence to attack

2. he-thought of mother

3. Theophil will-drive to wood

2.7.2.3. Improper prepositions

Improper prepositions are regarded as prepositions and we treat them in a similar way as the classical ones. Their list is enclosed in the supplements in 4.1. List of secondary prepositions.

If the secondary preposition consists in one word, no difference in representation ensues: it will depend in the same way as a primary preposition would do (see ex. (1)). Secondary prepositions, however, can consist of more words as well. In such cases the last word (node) of the preposition is taken and gets placed, as if it were a primary preposition, above the noun introduced by it. The remaining preceding
3. Rules of annotation

Nodes will depend directly on the last node all side by side. They obtain the same afun $\text{AuxP}$ (exx. (2) and (3)). The whole secondary prepositions are emphasized:

1. $\text{jednali}$ **ohledně** $\text{dědictví}$
   - they-negotiated *about* inheritance

2. $\text{zavřeli}$ $\text{z důvodu}$ $\text{dovolené}$
   - they-closed *for reasons of-leave*

3. $\text{křičela}$ $\text{bez}$ $\text{ohledu na}$ $\text{denní dobu}$
   - she-screamed *without regard of* day time

### 3.2.7.3. Emphasizing words $\text{AuxZ}$

#### 2.7.3.1. INFO $\text{AUXZ}$

Which words can obtain afun $\text{AuxZ}$, under which circumstances this is carried out and how these words behave is accounted for in the part 2.7.3.2. Defining of $\text{AuxZ}$. 
3. Rules of annotation

The part 2.7.3.3. Members modified by means of $\text{AuxZ}$ shows where all the $\text{AuxZ}$ can depend (what they emphasize); several trees can be found there to illustrate some particular cases. In 2.7.3.4. Multi-word emphasizes the case of the construction více než ($more$ than) is dealt with, which under certain circumstances is regarded as emphasizing, and whose representation within a tree-graph is considered.

2.7.3.2. Defining of $\text{AuxZ}$

In a sentence, afun $\text{AuxZ}$ is assigned to particles which fulfil the function of emphasizing a sentence member. They can emphasize almost any sentence member.

Only another $\text{AuxZ}$ may depend on the node with afun $\text{AuxZ}$ (in case one emphasizes the other - see 2.7.3.3. Members modified by means of $\text{AuxZ}$), or $\text{AuxY}$ (if a multiple-word emphasizing is the case - see 2.7.3.4. Multi-word emphases).

For our purpose the words that can obtain afun $\text{AuxZ}$ are included in a list. Words not contained there cannot be annotated in this way. In preparing this list we have relied on more sources. To Šmilauer’s list further words are added, especially those regarded as emphasizing by the Academic Grammar of Czech (AM, 2, pp. 228-238, esp. 235).

The list of potential $\text{AuxZ}$:

akorát, alespoň, ani, asi, aspoň, až, celkem, dohromady, dokonce, hlavně, hned, i, jakoby, jenině, jen, jenom, jistě, již, jmenovitě, leda, málem, maximálně, minimálně, nanejvýš, například, ne, nejen, nejenže, nejméně, nejvíce, nikoli, pak, pouze, právě, prostě, především, přesně, přímo, přinejmenším, rovněž, rovnou, skoro, sotva, taky, téměř, teprve, toliko, třeba, už, vůbec, zase, zejména, zhruba, zrovna, zřejmě, zvláště

As emphasizing in some cases also constructions více než ($more$ than) and méně než ($less$ than) can be regarded - see 2.7.3.4. Multi-word emphases.

The majority of the elements in the list consists of ambiguous words, which means that they can obtain some other afun according to context. As to the parts of speech, the Auxz words are ambiguous mostly with adverbs, but also with other parts of speech. E.g., according to SSČ:

- $až$ (when, after, as far as...) adverb, subordinating conjunction, particle
- $jen$ (only, but, hardly...) adverb, particle, interjection
- $i$ (and, as well as, even if...) coordinating conjunction, particle or a part of conjunctional subordinating expressions ($i$ když, $i$ kdyby)

The decision as to which concrete afun ($\text{AuxZ}$ or other) to choose on the basis of context is up to the annotator. In the following examples some of the words taken from the list (emphasized) are shown in some of their functions:
3. Rules of annotation

1. *zvláště.* AuxZ students se výborně projevili
epecially students Reflex excellently turned-out
e especially the students made themselves felt in an excellent manner

2. (hodně =) *zvláště.* Adv přitažlivě vypadá
(very =) especially attractive she-looks
she looks (very =) especially attractive

3. (hodně =) *zvláště.* Adv velký
(very =) especially large

4. to je *přímo.* AuxZ skandál
that is directly scandal
that is a downright scandal

5. cesty vedou *přímo.* Adv i oklikou
roads lead straight and round
the roads lead both straight and round

6. stát i AuxZ nadále podporuje bydlení
government also further supports housing-projects
government continues supporting the housing projects

7. vyskytly se *klady* i Coord úskalí
occurred Reflex assets and stumbling-blocks
both assets and stumbling blocks occurred

In some cases not even a whole sentence suffices for univocal determination of the function. E.g., in the following sentences

1. uzavření dohody bude trvat ještě několik týdnů
concluding agreement will take still some weeks

2. svět zajímají z Minska ponejvíce
world-Acc interest from Minsk mostly
zprávy strategického významu
news-Acc of-strategic importance
from Minsk the world is interested mostly in news of strategic importance

The emphasized words can, apart from obtaining function AuxZ, be interpreted as Adv and depend on the verb.
2.7.3.3. Members modified by means of \texttt{AuxZ}

In the tree structure \texttt{AuxZ} depends immediately on the word which is emphasized by it. Examples show emphasizing a simple noun (ex. (1)), a noun in a prepositional construction (ex. (3)), a whole noun phrase (exx. (4) and (5)), secondary prepositions (exx. (6) and (7)), numerals (ex. (8)), verb (ex. (10)), adverb (ex. (11)), adjective (ex. (12)), another emphasizing particle (ex. (13)), individual members of a coordination (ex. (14)) and subordinate clause (ex. (15)).

\texttt{AuxZ} is emphasized.

1. tak smutně vypadá \textit{jen poušt’}
   
   so sadly looks \textit{only desert}
   
   \textit{only a desert can look as sad as that}

2. \textit{teprve Karel to rozhodl}
   
   \textit{only Charles it decided}
   
   \textit{it was only Charles to have decided it}

3. tyto kaktusy rostou \textit{jen v poušti}
   
   these cactuses grow \textit{only in desert}
3. Rules of annotation

4. jen přílišní optimisté vytrvalí
   only excessive optimists persevered

5. zprávy jsou aspoň v první versi
   news are at-least in first version
   the news exist at least in their first version

6. rostou právě uprostřed pralesa
   they-grow just in-the-midst of-forest
3. Rules of annotation

7. rostou naprosto nezávisle na pomínkách
   they-grow entirely independent of conditions

8. přišli pouze dva
   arrived only two

9. vydrželi jen dva
   endured only two

10. Karel jen spí
    Charles just sleeps
    Charles does nothing but sleep
3. Rules of annotation

11. stát $i$ nadále podporuje bydlení
state also further supports housing-projects
the government goes on supporting housing projects

12. svetr je pouze zelený
sweater is only green

13. hlavně ne limonádu
particularly not lemonade
3. Rules of annotation

14. It travelled not only inside the Republic but also abroad.

15. I leave from house only when it is fine-weather.

**Emphasizing nouns and numerals:**
In positions close to a noun or to a numeral (i.e. when not introducing a clause), some words cannot obtain any other aux than AuxZ. A list of such words (a partial list of potential AuxZ) follows: akoráť, alespoň (aspoň), asi, celkem, dohromady, i, málem, maximálně, minimálně, nanejvýš, nejméně, nejvíc, právě, přesně, přinejmenším, skoro, taky, téměř, zhruba.

**Emphasizing improper prepositions:**
While in emphasizing prepositional cases with “current” prepositions the emphasizing word depends on the noun, the so-called secondary prepositions (see 2.7.2.3. Improper prepositions) themselves can be emphasized.

**Emphasizing a verb:**
AuxZ can (see ex. (10)) sometimes depend on the predicate, too. This case, however, mustn’t be mistaken for the occurrence of the so-called particle relating to the contents of the utterance as a whole; this particle also depends on the verb, but it obtains...
3. Rules of annotation

\(\text{AuxY}\) (see 2.7.7.2. Particles pertaining to the whole utterance). The two examples below concern “particle pertaining to utterance” (\(\text{AuxY, emphasized}\)):

1. patrně se nikdo z nás nezúčastní
   apparently \(\text{Refl}\) no-one of us will-participate
   apparently no one of us is going to participate

2. máme to bohudík za sebou
   we-have it thank-goodness behind us
   we are through, thank goodness

**Emphasizing subordinate clauses:**
With dependent clauses introduced by such compound conjunctions as “i když”, “i kdyby” (even when, even if) emphasis is not the case. The word i represents an inseparable part of the conjunction and it obtains afun \(\text{AuxX}\) (see 2.7.7.6. Compound subordinating conjunctions).

### 2.7.3.4. Multi-word emphases

In some cases also such constructions as “více než” a “méně než” (more than, less than) function as emphasis. It happens whenever the author infringes on syntactic relations, when the words more or less defy current treatment described in 3.6.9. Phrases of comparison with conjunctions jako (as), než (than). They are, e.g., constructions morphologically equivalent to the example více než tisícový zástup - more than thousand-headed crowd (correctly: větší než tisícový zástup - larger than thousand-headed...).

afun \(\text{AuxZ}\) is given to více/méně; než (than) becomes dependent on it and obtains afun \(\text{AuxY}\) (which is done in agreement with the rules on afun \(\text{AuxY}\) - see 2.7.7.8. Compound emphasizing particles).

1. více než tisícíhlavý zástup
   more than thousand-headed crowd
2. Rules of annotation

3.2.7.4. Emotional, rhythmic particles (mi, vám, si...; to, ono) AuxO

2.7.4.1. Particle AuxO

afun AuxO are assigned to:

1. Ethical Dative and Emotional Dative
2. Rhythmic particles without their own syntactic function

(1) Ethical Dative fulfils the function of linking up with the addressee, i.e. resuming (maintaining) contact (to vám byla zábava; včera jsem ti nemohl usnout; on ti byl celý nesvůj = (approx.) that was an entertainment, I tell you; yesterday I couldn’t fall asleep, you know; you see, he was quite beside himself). Such a contacting function can be found with the dative of interest, at times called dative of communicativeness, too (kyselina nám začíná reagovat, běží nám osmá minuta, neparkujte nám na trávě = (approx.) we have the acid starting to react, we have the 8th minute running, we don’t want to have you parking on our lawn).

Emotional Dative colours utterances with emotions (to je mi pěkný pořádek, ty nám tu lenošit nebudeš = (approx.) a pretty mess it is, I say; you are not going to idle away your time here, we’ll see to it). Distinguishing these types of dative is dealt with in 3.6.5. The boundary line between free and ‘bound’ dative.
3. Rules of annotation

In the form of the above mentioned datives also the reflexive particle *si* can occur. This then obtains afun *AuxO* (see the rule SI 4 in 6.8.2. Reflexive *si*).

(2) Some words (*to it, ono that, co what...*) seem “superfluous” in some sentences. Essentially, they duplicate some other sentence member already present (functioning). This, as a rule, is a matter of emotion or rhythm. In case we find another element in the sentence seemingly fulfilling the function of these words, we denote these words as afun *AuxO*. This, e.g., happens even if such a word has a position similar to that of subject in a one-member sentence (*to prší - what a rain*).

Particles with afun *AuxO* are emphasized:

1. *on* tatínek nepřišel  
   *he* father  did-not-come  
   *father, he failed to come*

2. *to* prší  
   *what* it-rains  
   *what a rain*
3. Rules of annotation

3.

to on tatínek nepřišel
what he father did-not-come
obviously, father failed to come

4.

có je to filosofie
what is it philosophy

5.

sud, co ho Tonda narazil
cask that it Tony tapped
the cask that Tony had tapped

3.2.7.5. Reflexivum tantum (se, si) AuxT

2.7.5.1. Particle AuxT

afun AuxT are assigned to the particles se, si in case the verb without them doesn’t exist, as a Reflexivum tantum. This case is described by the rules SE 1 and SI 1 in 3.6.8. Reflexive se, si ).
3. Rules of annotation

1. **boji se ho**
   he-is-afraid **Ref1** of-him

2. **Franta si pospíšil k lékaři**
   Frank **Ref1** hastened to physician

3.2.7.6. Reflexive passive (se), **AuxR**

2.7.6.1. Particle **AuxR**

   afun **AuxR** is assigned to the particle se if it represents a reflexive passive according to the rule SE 3 (or, as the case may be, SE 4) in 3.6.8. Reflexive se, si).

   **tancovalo se až do rána**
   it-danced **Ref1** till to morning

   *the dancing went on till morning*
3. Rules of annotation

3.2.7.7. Parts of multi-word constructions, some particles, decayed parenthesis

 AuxY

2.7.7.1. INFO AUXY

There are more phenomena for which afun AuxY is used, and they are of different character. In fact, this section in its essence represents a list of different individual instances of application of this function. It is assigned to particles pertaining to the whole sentence (2.7.7.2. Particles pertaining to the whole utterance), particles introducing a loosely attached member (2.7.7.3. Particles introducing a loosely attached sentence member), a conjunction as an introducing complement or an object (2.7.7.4. The conjunction jako introducing complement or object). Also parts of different collocations, particularly of coordinating conjunctions (2.7.7.5. Particles forming a part of connecting expressions), of subordinating conjunctions (2.7.7.6. Compound subordinating conjunctions), of apposition expressions (2.7.7.7. Multi-word apposition expressions) and of emphasizing particles (2.7.7.8. Compound emphasizing particles) obtain this function. Last but not least, also parts of phrasemes dealt with in 3.6.6. Collocations, phraseologisms (phrasemes) (here 2.7.7.9. Parts of phrasemes) are denoted in this way.

Most of the parts of this section contain lists. They are lists of words which occasionally can obtain AuxY. It holds without exception that whatever is not included in these lists cannot be classed with this afun.

2.7.7.2. Particles pertaining to the whole utterance

The function AuxY is, among others, assigned to particles that pertain to the contents of the whole sentence, i.e., to those traditionally called sentence adverbs. In this respect they differ from the emphasizing particles, which can pertain to individual nouns (noun groups), numerals and adverbs, or, as the case may be, to subordinate clauses (see 3.2.7.3. Emphasizing words AuxZ).

The particles cannot be identified but on the basis of contexts in which they are found. For the most part, as a matter of fact, they are ambiguous, above all with adverbs, or with conjunctions. They differ from adverbs in that they do not represent sentence members and they do not form syntagms together with other words in the sentence. They differ from conjunctions in that they do not have an independent clear-cut connecting function.

The words that can obtain afun AuxY are given by a list. This means that words which fail to appear in the list cannot figure in the role of a particle pertaining to the whole of the utterance.
These words can obtain a bare afun $\text{AuxY}$ unless they are graphically separated in the text. In case they are separated, they obtain afun $\text{AuxY}\_\text{Pa}$, since they represent a parenthesis. The same lists, however, hold for both the functions. The parenthesis of the type $\text{AuxY}\_\text{Pa}$ is described in 3.5.2. A 'frozen' parenthesis $\text{AuxY}\_\text{Pa}$.

**A list of potential $\text{AuxY}$ which pertain to the whole utterance and which are ambiguous with adverbs:**

asi, bohůdík, bohužel, cožpak, jakoby, jasně, kupodivu, možná, nakonec, naopak, například, nesporně, nicméně, nu, nuže, opravdu, ostatně, patrně, pravděpodobně, prostě, právě, přece jen, rozhodně, samozřejmě, skutečně, snad, stejně, tak, tedy, totiž, určitě, věru, vlastně, však, zřejmě

**A list of potential $\text{AuxY}$ pertaining to the whole utterance, which are ambiguous with conjunctions:**

aby, at’, at’ už, kdyby, že

In the tree structure the particle having the function $\text{AuxY}$ depends on the predicate of the clause in question. If more words belonging together are involved (přece jen (although), at’ už (be it), rather than two independent particles - například kupodivu... - for instance, strangely enough), one gets suspended from the other, the higher position taken by the first in the sequence

In the following examples the particles with the function $\text{AuxY}$ (emphasized) are placed in the contexts of concrete sentences:

1. dopadlo to bohůdík positivně
turned-out it thank-goodness positively

2. opravdu nikdo nepřišel
really no-one arrived

3. bude to možná nejdůležitější krok
will it may-be most-important step

4. presidium usiluje totiž o tento krok
board endeavours as-a-matter-of-fact for this step

5. ve městě snad není volné místo
in town perhaps is-not free place

there may be no free place in the town
3. Rules of annotation

6. v krajích naopak počet obyvatel stagnuje in regions on-the-contrary number of-inhabitants stagnates

7. někteří zřejmě resignují some obviously will-resign

8. prý nikdo nepřišel they-say no-one has-come no one has come, they say

9. pokud však obchodník prodá produkt, zbohatne if however shopkeeper sells product he-gets-rich

10. měl by se například zabývat právem he-ought Aux Refl for-instance concern with-law he, e.g., ought to be concerned with law

11. bohužel se o tom nevědělo unfortunately Refl about it it-didn’t-know unfortunately, there was no idea about it

12. předpokládaná situace kupodivu nenastala anticipated situation strangely-enough failed-to-come-true

13. patrně se prodá cokoli apparently Refl sells anything apparently, anything will sell
3. Rules of annotation

14. Přece jen to uhnilo!
in-the-end even it rotted-away
it has rotted away, in the end

15. stejně se nic nezmění
anyway nothing is-going-to-change

16. nuže skončeme
well finished-up

17. vlastně je to špatně
actually is it wrong

18. jiné řešení prostě není
other solution simply is-not

19. ostatně to není pravda
for-that-matter it isn’t true

20. může to tak tedy zůstat
can it so thus remain
that’s why it can remain like that

21. nicméně souhlasila i Lída
nevertheless agreed even Lída
nevertheless, even Lída agreed

22. pravděpodobně to tak bude
in-all-probability it like-this will-be

23. samozřejmě nebyla spokojena
as-a-matter-of-course she wasn’t satisfied
3. Rules of annotation

24. jasně nebyla spokojena
   clearly she-wasn't satisfied

25. věrů se mi to nelíbí
   certainly Refl me it does-not-please
   certainly I do not like it

26. nu nic se nestalo
   well nothing Refl happened

27. nikdo určitě nic nezmění
   no-one surely nothing is-going-to-change
   surely no one is going to change anything

28. asi to byla pravda
   perhaps it was true
   it may have been true

29. rozhodně to byla pravda
   surely it was true
   it by all means was true

30. nesporně není dobře
    undoubtedly it-is-not well
    it is beyond dispute that the times are not good

31. skutečně není dobře
    really it-is-not well
    really, the times are not good

32. nakonec se nic nestalo
    in-the-end Refl nothing has-happened

33. jakoby se vypařil
    as-if Refl he-had-evaporated

34. tak jsme zase prohráli
    so Aux again we-have-lost

35. cožpak jsem králík?
    what am-I rabbit?
    what do you take me for, a rabbit?
3. Rules of annotation

36. už aby ta zima skončila
   already may that winter end
   may that winter come to an end!

37. že se trochu nestydíte
   that Re fl a-little aren’t-you-ashamed
   aren’t you a little ashamed, I wonder

38. Kdyby to byla skutečnost!

Kdyby to byla skutečnost!
may it were reality
may it only be reality!

39. at’ se stane cokoli
   may Re fl happen anything

40. at’ už se stane cokoli
   may already Re fl happen whatever
   whatever may happen

2.7.7.3. Particles introducing a loosely attached sentence member

Loosely attached sentence members (3.6.13. Freely adjoined sentence parts is
devoted to them) are, as a rule, introduced by particles a to, a sice, a (i.e., viz., or
(else)). The loosely attached sentence members (there is mostly just one, but more of
them can be present as well) obtain their current afun, the placement of the particles
and of comma can be seen in the examples. Commas depend on the outermost
members like parenthetic punctuation (described in the part 2.8.4.3. Bracketing
AuxG). The particles which obtain afun AuxY depend on the first member and in
case they consist of two nodes, the first node of the particle depends on the second.

The AuxY particles introducing a loosely attached sentence member are emphasized.
3. Rules of annotation

1. usedl, a to v rohu
   he-sat-down and that in corner

2. darovali knihu, a sice kupodivu Brňanům
   they-donated book and that surprisingly to-Brno-people

3. namazal si, a to včera o půlnoci v koupelně
   he-lubricated Reflex and that yesterday at midnight in bathroom
   olejem, kolečko od trakaře
   with-oil, wheel of dung-barrow
2.7.7.4. The conjunction *jako* introducing complement or object

The function $\text{Aux}_Y$ is also assigned to the conjunctions *jako, jakožto* (as) in case the nouns (or adjectives) introduced by these conjunctions play the role of a predicative complement (see 2.6.6.6. Complement introduced by the conjunction *jako*) or of an object (see 3.2.4. Object $\text{Obj}, \text{ObjAtr}, \text{AtrObj}$, esp. the part 3.2.4.6. Object after copulas and semi-copulas).

To distinguish the meaning of *jako* as a conjunction ($\text{Aux}_C$) from that of *jako* as a part of a complement ($\text{Aux}_Y$) Šmilauer recommends a simple test: If it is a complement to be attached, *jako* can be replaced by *jakožto*; e.g., in the sentence *Kutná Hora byla založena jako horní osada* (K.H. was founded as a mining settlement) the function is a complement, rather than a comparison - *jakožto* can stand in the place of *jako*, having the function $\text{Aux}_Y$. Cf. *spí jako zabitý* (sleeps as a log) - here it is a classical conjunction (expressing comparison), to be suspended in accordance to principles for $\text{Aux}_C$. The same that holds for complement does for object, too.

The conjunctions *jako, jakožto* - $\text{Aux}_Y$ introducing (i.e. a complement referring to an object and displaying grammatical agreement with it) depend in the tree structure on this complement/object (which has $\text{AtrV/Obj}$) as its daughter nodes.

![Diagram](image)

1. `omítal nabídku jako málo atraktivní`
   - he-refused offer *as* a-little attractive

2. `jakožto politický činitel prosadil kampaň`
   - *as* political authority he-pushed-through campaign
3. Rules of annotation

2.7.7.5. Particles forming a part of connecting expressions

The function AuxY belongs also to particles which figure as parts of expressions introducing coordination, partly as compound classical conjunctions (part 4.1.3.5. Multiple coordinating expressions), partly as some expressions that currently close the coordination (part 4.1.3.2. Non-standard termination of a coordinated list).

A list of compound coordinating conjunctions:
(Parts with afun AuxY are emphasized.)

a proto
a přesto
proto ale
přesto ale
a tak
a tedy
a tudič
a tím
ale zato
sice ... ale

připadá mi to jako neskutečné
occurs to-me it as illusory
it occurs to me as illusory
3. Rules of annotation

In the case of “separate” expressions (of the type ani ... ani, bud' ... anebo, sice ... ale (neither ... nor, either ... or, though ... but), etc.) we regard the second part as the bearer of a connecting relationship. The first component obtains afun AuxY. The particles with the function AuxY forming a part of the connecting expression depends on the pertinent conjunction in the tree structure (side by side).

A list of current but non-standard closing elements of coordination:
The parts with afun AuxY are emphasized

```
   ???
    
    dâle AuxY
    
    tak AuxY
```

a tak dâle (and so on)
a tak podobně (and similarly on)
a podobně (and similarly)
et cetera (etc.)

From the coordination conjunction (which is to control the whole coordination) the remaining words will be suspended and they obtain afun AuxY. If there are two such words, the first depends on the second.

2.7.7.6. Compound subordinating conjunctions

Subordinating conjunctions (AuxC) can consist of more elements (see 2.7.1.3. Compound (multiple element) subordinating conjunctions). Mind, however, mistaking them for mere emphasizing a subordinate clause. If a subordinate clause is introduced by pouze když (only if), the conjunction is když while the pouze plays
3. Rules of annotation

the emphasizing role only (see 2.7.3.3. Members modified by means of $\text{AuxZ}$). On the other hand, the conjunctions contained in the list are inseparable.

A list of compound subordinating conjunctions:
$\text{AuxY}$ dependent on the second element having afun $\text{AuxC}$ are emphasized.

1. přišli, $i$ když není středa
they-came even when it isn’t Wednesday
they have come though it isn’t Wednesday

2. sedmu dostanu, $i$ kdyby čert na koze jezdil
seven I-shall-get, even if devil on goat rode
$I$ shall get the seven, come hell or high water

3. at’ už se stane cokoli, vyhrajeme
let already $\text{RefI}$ happens whatever we-shall-win
whatever may happen, we shall win

4. zařídím to, $jen$ co se usadím
I-will-do it $as\text{-}soon\text{-}as$ what $\text{RefI}$ I-settle-down
I’ll manage as soon as I settle down
3. Rules of annotation

2.7.7. Multi-word apposition expressions

If the expression introducing apposition consists of more elements, it is the last word in the series that becomes the governing node with afun $\text{Apos}$. The remaining members depend on it and obtain afun $\text{AuxY}$. The particle with afun $\text{AuxY}$ is emphasized.

Stanovil symboly, a to znak a prapor he-designated symbols, and that emblem and banner

Apposition can be introduced by one of the following multi-word expressions: *a sice* (that is), *a tedy* (and thus), *a to* (that is), *jako je* (that is, with a form of the verb be), *jako například* (as for instance), *tak třeba* (as for instance), *to jest* (that is), *to znamená* (that is)

2.7.7.8. Compound emphasizing particles

Emphasizing particles are usually one-word elements (see 2.7.3.2. Defining of $\text{AuxZ}$). Exceptions are represented by such groups as “více než” a “méně než” (more than, less than) which under certain circumstances (infringement of syntactic rules - see 2.7.3.4. Multi-word emphases) can be represented as two-word emphasizing expressions. The word *než* then obtains afun $\text{AuxY}$ and depends on the second node, which is assigned $\text{AuxZ}$.
3. Rules of annotation

více než tisícichlavy zástup
more than thousand-headed crowd

2.7.7.9. Parts of phrasemes

All elements participating in various phrasemes obtain afun AuxY. This problem is dealt with in 3.6.6. Collocations, phraseologisms (phrasemes).

noc co noc flámoval
night after night he-spent-on-a-spree

3.2.8. Graphic symbols (punctuation); the root of the tree AuxS, AuxK, AuxX, AuxG

By punctuation all graphic symbols are understood which do not form a part of a word or a number written in numerals. This concerns, above all, the comma, treated by special rules and possibly having different functions (it most usually obtains afun AuxX - see 3.2.8.3. Comma AuxX), further the fullstop, question mark, exclamation mark, semicolon, colon, parentheses and inverted commas of all kinds, asterisks, slashes etc. All these punctuation marks obtain their afuns according to their position in the sentence: it either concerns punctuation at the end of the sentence, separating the given sentence from the subsequent one (see 3.2.8.2. Terminal symbol of the sentence AuxK), or punctuation within the sentence (obtaining, as a rule, afun AuxG - see 3.2.8.4. Punctuation, other graphic symbols AuxG). A special case is represented.
by the additional symbol # to denote the root of the tree (see 3.2.8.1. The root of the tree AuxS).

For any punctuation marks (with the exception of the root AuxS, with which it can’t happen) the rules concerning ExD hold. If, therefore, as a consequence of an ellipsis, the punctuation occurs in some other position in the tree than normally expected, the afuns AuxK, AuxX, AuxG (in the same way as the afuns of current sentence members) get replaced by the afun ExD.

3.2.8.1. The root of the tree AuxS

Any segment subjected to our analysis obtains automatically the additional symbol #. This symbol always stands for the root of its tree being automatically marked afun AuxS in advance.

In current circumstances the predicate of the main clause depends on # (with afun Pred), as well as the final punctuation mark (see 3.2.1. Predicate Pred, Pnom, AuxV and 3.2.8.2. Terminal symbol of the sentence AuxK). As far as incomplete sentences without a predicate are concerned, one or more nodes with afun ExD depend on the symbol #, which, as the case may be, can be suspended with the aid of intermediate AuxP or AuxC (see 3.3.1. Ellipsis ExD, ExD_Co).

In some specific cases a subordinating conjunction with afun AuxC can stand depend on the symbol #, with the predicate (Pred) dependent on the conjunction (see 3.1.4.5. Ellipsis of the governing clause).

All the members mentioned above can, in addition, be coordinated (a node with afun Coord will depend on the root, see 3.4.1. Coordination (sentential, of sentence parts) Coord, <afun> _Co), or there can be a parenthesis (the member obtaining a suffix Pa, see 3.5. Parenthesis.

1. Odstoupil
   He-resigned
3. Rules of annotation

2.8.2.2. Current sentences

The terminal punctuation mark in the sentence obtains a special analytical function \( \text{AuxK} \). If there are more than one punctuation marks at the end of the sentence, all of them are handled in this way. This function (as one of the few treated in this way) is assigned to the terminal punctuation already in the preparation of data for manual annotation. It is necessary, however, to examine whether the punctuation has not some other function (e.g., it could be a fullstop following an abbreviation, etc., where the function \( \text{AuxG} \) should be used, or a case in which in a tree more than one \( \text{AuxK} \) occur, which then are to be supplied manually according to the following conventions). A normal termination of a sentence by means of a fullstop is illustrated by an example:

1. Pracuje
   He-is-working

3.2.8.2. Terminal symbol of the sentence \( \text{AuxK} \)

2.8.2.1. INFO AUXK

This section has only two parts. In the part 2.8.2.2. Current sentences all current terminations of sentences are described, as well as the ways they are treated in our analysis. In the part 2.8.2.3. Titles and ciphers an example of a newspaper title is shown with its position in the tree structure.

3.2.8.2. Terminal symbol of the sentence \( \text{AuxK} \)
3. Rules of annotation

If (usually for technical reasons, above all owing to imperfections in programmes detecting the boundaries between sentences) it is necessary to represent two sentences within one tree, the function $\text{AuxK}$ is used to mark the punctuation terminating the other sentences as well. No such sentence ought to occur in the resulting corpus (it will be corrected manually). Parentheses which figure in the example depend, conforming to the general rules of handling punctuation, on the governing member of the introduced part of the sentence.

1. Přišel. ( Ale proč !? )
   he-came ( but why ? )

If at the end of a sentence there is only one punctuation symbol which stands for more symbols (e.g., if an indicative sentence terminates by an abbreviation followed by a fullstop, but in the text only one fullstop appears, as it is usual according to the rules of orthography), the terminal punctuation of the sentence is supposed to have the lowest priority: the node in question is regarded as a part of the sentence rather than as the terminal punctuation.

Přišel za 30 min .
he-arrived in 30 min .
3. Rules of annotation

Typographical conventions require some punctuation symbols to change their natural sequences. Even in such cases we proceed by making the punctuation depend on the node to which it naturally belongs. A non-projective tree results in this way. Let us illustrate this by the following example. The quotation marks in accordance with the general rules of punctuation depend on the governing word of the subtree introduced by them. The terminal fullstop depends on the root of the tree, although in terms of “word-order” the concluding quotation marks may precede.

Byl "dravcem".
he-was predator

In most of the cases the terminal punctuation depends on the root of the tree (where, by the way, it has often been already placed by the programme for data preparation). However, a “terminal” punctuation is approached in a special way if it obviously belongs to some independent clause (e.g., to direct speech or parenthesis - both are contained in the example); this holds also in cases in which they are situated at the end of the sentence. (Even so they, in fact, fulfil two functions, of which we prefer the function of terminating the parenthesis or direct speech). In this case this “terminal” punctuation depends on the predicate or some other technically governing node of the clause to which it belongs (it also obtains fun AuxK). If this governing node is missing, the mentioned “terminal” punctuation gets dependent on the nearest higher node and obtains fun ExD.
3. Rules of annotation

Petr tenkrát řekl (zpomínáte?) " Potřebuji počítač "
Petr then said do-you-remember " I-need computer "

2.8.2.3. Titles and ciphers

1. Praha (jxk) - President navštívil metropoli
   Prague (jxk) - President visited metropolis

3.2.8.3. Comma AuxX

Comma is used to stand between clauses and to separate individual members of coordination or apposition. With the exception of the case in which a comma represents the main node of a coordination or apposition, its function always is AuxX (or ExD). If it represents the main node of coordination it obtains afun Coord (see also 3.4.1. Coordination (sentential, of sentence parts) Coord, <afun>_Co). If it represents the main node of apposition, it obtains afun Apos (see also 3.4.2. Apposition Apos, <afun>_Ap). The dependence of comma (on its “governing” node) is technical, not grammatical, similarly as it is with the rest of punctuation.

1. A comma separating a clause will depend on the node (technically) governing the subordinate clause, which is either a conjunction with the function AuxC (in the case of a subordinate conjunctive clause), or on some other governing node of the subordinate clause (usually a predicate with dependent relative clause) with the
pertinent function; if the predicate is elided or if the conjunction is missing, comma depends on the nearest superior node and it obtains the function $ExD$ (see 3.3.1. Ellipsis $ExD, ExD\_Co$). If the subordinate clause is inserted and both its separating commas are present in the sentence, both will depend on the same node.

1. dům, který pláče
   house that is-weeping

2. viděl, že spí
   he-saw that s/he-was-sleeping

2. If comma separates a parenthesis, it depends on the (technically) governing node of the parenthesis. If the (grammatically) governing member of the parenthesis is a node with the value of the function $ExD\_Pa$, then the comma (or both the commas if the parenthesis is placed inside the sentence) depends on the nearest higher node and obtains the function $ExD$ (mind: not $ExD\_Pa$). This concerns any other punctuation separating parenthesis (from one side or from both sides).

1. voda se, abych tak řekl, umoudřila
   water $Refl$ so-that so I-said grew-wise
   the water, so to speak, grew wise

2. před smrtí, neznámo proč, si koupil tramvajenku
   before death unknown why $Refl$ he-bought tram-pass
   before dying, for reasons unknown, he bought a tram-pass
3. Rules of annotation

3. Commas separating sentences or coordinated sentence parts are hung on the relevant coordinating conjunction or some other coordinating node with the afun Coord (e.g. *ale* but, *a and*, *nebot’ since*, *proto therefore* etc.). It may happen that even if such a node of coordination is introduced, we have to make use of the comma: this comma will be the last one in the series and will thus be labelled as Coord. The other delimiting commas will get the afun AuxX and will hang on the last one. A more detailed instruction concerning coordination is given in 3.4.1. Coordination (sentential, of sentence parts) Coord, <afun> _Co.

1. důvěřuje magii, mystice a jiným pověrám
   he-trusts in-magic, mystic and other superstitions

4. If there is a combination of several phenomena, it might happen that some comma is missing in the sentence. More exactly, one comma displays several functions though it is represented by a single node. When deciding which of its functions should be assigned to this node, we hang such a comma “as high as possible”. If a coordinating comma with afun Coord cooccurs with some other comma (with the afun AuxX or ExD), the coordination function has a priority. If a coordinating function cooccurs with the function AuxX and other commas, the coordinating comma will hang on the highest node in the tree, on which it may hang. If the cooccurrence of commas takes place on the same level of the tree (e.g. if the comma functions as end of an embedded clause and at the same time as an opening of another clause), the following priorities should be obeyed:

1. coordinating comma with Coord
2. comma opening an embedded clause
3. coordinating comma with the afun AuxX
4. comma closing an embedded clause

3.2.8.4. Punctuation, other graphic symbols AuxG

2.8.4.1. INFO AUXG

The conditions under which a punctuation mark is assigned afun AuxG and the specification of exceptions are described in section 2.8.4.2. Specification of the afun AuxG. The following sections are devoted to individual types of punctuation marks from the point of view of their functions (meaning) and to the representation of these types. The following functions are distinguished: bracketing, closing an embedded part of the sentence (2.8.4.3. Bracketing AuxG), introductory, delimiting a part of a text (2.8.4.4. Introducing punctuation (colon)), the punctuation mark after an abbreviation (2.8.4.5. Punctuation marks after an abbreviation (fullstop)), the punctuation mark after a serial numeral (2.8.4.6. Punctuation mark after a
3. Rules of annotation

serial numeral (fullstop), superfluous punctuation marks (2.8.4.7. A superfluous punctuation mark (three dots)), the hyphen with -li (2.8.4.8. Punctuation mark with the conjunction -li (hyphen)), and the hyphen in compounds (2.8.4.9. Punctuation marks in compound proper names).

2.8.4.2. Specification of the afun **AuxG**

In principle, punctuation marks are assigned afun **AuxG**. This function is assigned (as one of the few) to all punctuation marks (with the exception of comma and those punctuation marks that stand at the end of the sentence) at the point of the preparation of the data for manual tagging. However, it is always necessary to check, whether the punctuation mark has also some other function.

If a punctuation mark is the final punctuation mark of the sentence, it may get afun **AuxK** (see 3.2.8.2. Terminal symbol of the sentence **AuxK**), commas are usually assigned afun **AuxX** (see 3.2.8.3. Comma **AuxX**), but they may be also assigned other afuns, namely **Apos** and **Coord**.

The afun **Apos** is assigned if the punctuation mark introduces the second part of apposition and if there is no commonly used expression in this position that could be used instead (e.g. *tj. i.e.*, *např. e.g.*, *apod. etc.*). The bracket, colon or another introductory punctuation mark becomes the node for apposition (**Apos**); in the case of a kind of bracket, its second part hangs on this node with the afun **AuxG**. For a more detail on apposition, see Sect. 3.4.2. Apposition **Apos**, <afun>__Ap__.

The afun **Coord** is assigned in case of punctuation marks for coordination. It can either coordinate two sentences, or two parts of some whole, as is the case with sport results or temporal expressions of the type hh:mm. See also 3.4.1. Coordination (sentential, of sentence parts) **Coord**, <afun>__Co__. 

1. 

liberální strana (LSNS)  
Liberal party (LSNS)
3. Rules of annotation

1. 

2. 

3. 

Foto: Přemysl Toníček
Photo: Přemysl Toníček

stav je 5:1
score is 5:1

Už zase hlasovali ..., odhlasovali si dovolenou!
once again they-voted ..., they-decided-for Ref1 vacations
3. Rules of annotation

4. Bracketing AuxG

The node for a “bracketing” punctuation (all kinds of brackets and quotation marks, or commas, as the case may be, if they have only a “bracketing” function) depends on the governing node of the introduced (bracketed) part of the sentence:

"mezní" případy
"boundary" cases

If the governing member of the bracketed part is missing, the mechanism of ExD is used for the sentence members within the bracketed part as well as for the punctuation marks. The nodes for the punctuation marks thus hang on the next higher node, and get the afun ExD.
3. Rules of annotation

"Borůvky," odpověděla
"Blueberries," she answered

If, however, the governing word of the bracketed part is present, the function of the punctuation mark remains unchanged, even if the governing word itself has a fun ExD (this is the case when some grammatically superordinated member is deleted, but the punctuation mark would not be dependent on this node).

Přijde a hned: "Kde je večeře?"
he comes and immediately: "Where is dinner?"

If a dependent clause (most often a direct speech) is interrupted by an introductory main clause, all inverted commas depend (in many cases in a non-projective way) on the governing member of the direct speech they introduce:

"Karel," řekl Tonda, "nepřišel".
"Karel," said Tonda, "didn’t come."
3. Rules of annotation

It may happen that the bracketing punctuation delimits more than two members, without a deletion being present. “Brackets” are then hung on the governing nodes of the boundary members of the delimited part of the sentence:

prolínání "velmi vznešeného s pokleslým"
intermixing "of-very noble with lower"

For bracketing punctuation marks with direct speech, see 3.6.1. Direct speech.

2.8.4.4. Introducing punctuation (colon)

Direct speech or some listings connected by coordination are usually delimited from the part that introduces them. Most frequently, this delimitation function is carried by a colon. In the sequel we call punctuation marks of this type introducing punctuation.

Introducing punctuation depends on the governing node of the introduced part (direct speech, listing). Also in this case, the rule for $E_{x}D$ can be applied: if the governing node is missing, the introducing punctuation mark is hung on the next higher node and it gets the afun $E_{x}D$.

1. řekla: "zítra tady končíme."
she-said: "tomorrow here we-finish"
3. Rules of annotation

2. 

zasadili: brambory, cibuli a česnek,
they-planted: potatoes, onion and garlic

3. 

řekla: "Tonda Karlovi."
she-said: "Tonda to-Charles"

2.8.4.5. Punctuation marks after an abbreviation (fullstop)

An abbreviation is usually terminated by a fullstop. This fullstop depends directly on the node for the abbreviation.

2.8.4.6. Punctuation mark after a serial numeral (fullstop)

Fullstop after a serial numeral depends directly on the serial numeral.
3. Rules of annotation

2.8.4.7. A superfluous punctuation mark (three dots)

Superfluous marks that occur in the sentence depend on the nearest suitable node. If none of the nodes is supposed to be suitable for that purpose, these marks are hung as high as possible, but in a way that does not violate the projectivity of the tree.

Superfluous marks occur most frequently in the positions of deleted words (three dots). Three dots, however, often occur also as a part of coordination or even as the governing node of a coordination.

1. jděte

   ???

   všichni

   Sb

   do

   AuxP

   AuxG

   AuxG

   AuxG

   jde všichni do ...

   go all to ...

2. uznal

   ???

   Coord

   Švestky

   Sb Co

   meruňky

   Sb Co

   a

   AuxG

   AuxG

   AuxG

   AuxG

   uznal a) švestky, b) meruňky,

   ripened a) plums, b) apricots
3. Rules of annotation

3.8.4.8. Punctuation mark with the conjunction -li (hyphen)

The hyphen before *li depends directly on the conjunction *li, see 2.7.1.4. representation of the conjunction -li.

obrátí-li ho
if-he-turns him

2.8.4.9. Punctuation marks in compound proper names

Punctuation marks (most frequently a hyphen) in compound proper names (also in those of foreign origin) depend on the modifying nodes of the main node from the 'inner' side. More detailed instructions for the representation of compounds is given in 3.6.12. Composed Czech proper names, or, as the case may be, in 3.6.10. Foreign words in the text.

Anna - Marie
3.3. Ellipses — one-member sentences without a verb

3.3.1. Ellipsis $\text{ExD}, \text{ExD}_\text{Co}$

3.3.1.1. INFO EXD

In 3.3.1.2. Specification of ellipsis and the afun $\text{ExD}$ a specification of ellipsis is presented, followed by a list of its types, with an emphasis on the so-called actual (textual) ellipsis, represented by afun $\text{ExD}$.

The next section, 3.3.1.3. Ellipses treated by means of afun $\text{ExD}$, is devoted to different cases of actual ellipses; the list is, of course, just a random selection of frequently occurring phenomena such as: deletions of predicates in one-member sentences (3.1.3.1. Ellipsis of predicate in one-member non-verbal sentences), deletion of predicate when repeated (exdpropa), deletion of predicate in clauses introduced by conjunctions as jako (like) and než (than), deletion of predicate in proverbs and sayings (3.1.3.4. Ellipsis of predicate in sayings and proverbs), deletion of the predicate být (to be) in verbal nominal predicate (3.1.3.5. Ellipsis of a verb in verbo-nominal predicates), deletion of the verb být (to be) as a component part of compound verb forms (3.1.3.6. Ellipsis of components of complex verbal forms) and deletion of a transgressive in complement constructions (3.1.3.7. Ellipses of a transgressive in constructions with complement).

The cases of so-called lexicalized ellipses, which are represented without the use of afun $\text{ExD}$, are described in Sect 3.3.1.4. Ellipsis solved without afun $\text{ExD}$. This list is more definite and such types of deletions that are not listed there are represented by the afun $\text{ExD}$. The list contains the following items: deletion of the copula with some verbonominal predicates (3.1.4.1. Ellipsis of copula with some verbo-nominal predicates), deletion of a modified adjective with verbal predicates (3.1.4.2. Ellipsis of a predicate adjective), deletion of an attributive adjective standing between a noun and an adverb (3.1.4.3. Ellipsis of an adjective between a noun and an adverb), deletion of subject in the sentence (3.1.4.4. Ellipsis of subject), deletion of the governing clause (3.1.4.5. Ellipsis of the governing clause), deletion of noun with prepositions (3.1.4.9. Deletion of a noun after a preposition).

3.3.1.2. Specification of ellipsis and the afun $\text{ExD}$

Ellipsis (deletion) is a deletion of an expression that is expected in the given syntactic structure. Ellipsis generally is conditioned by the topic-focus articulation. It is a typical means of spoken language; in written texts it occurs mainly in certain types of texts (addresses, questionnaires, forms etc.). The deletion is not determined by its syntactic function but rather by the fact whether the expression concerned is a part of
the topic of the sentence or its focus; as a rule, the focus of the sentence cannot be deleted.

In our annotation scheme, the occurrence of deletion is marked by the afun ExD, which is assigned to all nodes that would be suspended on the node that is missing in the sentence, and these nodes are suspended in the position in which the missing node would have been suspended.

An exception to this rule are prepositions and subordinate conjunctions which get AuxP or AuxC, and the afun ExD “falls down” to the node that depends on them (and that constitutes a sentence member). A similar situation obtains with constructions with coordination and apposition, when ExD is shifted below, to the individual members of coordination or apposition, which are then marked as ExD_Co or ExD_Ap; the governing node of coordination or apposition keeps its afun Coord or Apos.

However, punctuation and other technical nodes can obtain ExD, in case their “proper” governing node is missing (see the examples in 3.5.5. A syntactically non-incorporated sentence part or sentential form; ellipsis; an independent sentence part; vocative; interjection Exd_Pa).

Traditionally, ellipses are classified according to different criteria as follows:

1. contextual or situational ellipsis,
2. word or sentence ellipsis, and
3. lexicalized or ‘actual’ (textual).

With a contextual ellipsis, some syntactic members in the topic of the sentence are deleted in dependence on the context of the utterance. For instance, after the question *Kam odjel váš bratr?* (Where has your brother left for?) it is possible to use just the focus *do Prahy* (to Prague) as the answer. With a situational ellipsis, the members are deleted in dependence on the concrete situation: e.g. when meeting somebody, we can just say *na procházku?* (for a walk?) or when ordering a glass of beer one can just say *jedno* (one).

The most important for the purpose of our annotation judgements is the third type of classification quoted above. Actual ellipsis is captured by the afun ExD, while with a lexicalized ellipsis this afun is not used, since we do not feel it as a deletion at all. For the reasons of consistency, the sentence members syntactically dependent on the deleted word (which technically is suspended at the very position in which the deleted word would be suspended) are assigned either that function the word would have if nothing were deleted (*jít* go in ex. (1)), or the function of the deleted word (*hodiny* o’clock in ex. (2)). An actual ellipsis occurs only in the given context, it is not connected with any fixed expression. The sentence members depending on
3. Rules of annotation

the deleted word are assigned $\text{ExD}$ and are suspended in the place where the deleted member would be placed (the second occurrence of $\text{obce}$ villages in ex. (3)).

1.  \[ \text{musím} \quad \text{domů} \]

Musím domů.
I-must home

2.  \[ \text{jsou} \quad \text{tři} \]

Jsou tři.
there-are three

3.  \[ \text{připojení} \quad \text{obce} \quad \text{k} \quad \text{druhé} \]

Připojení jedné obce k druhé.
attachment of-one village to another

3.3.1.3. Ellipses treated by means of afun $\text{ExD}$

3.1.3.1. Ellipsis of predicate in one-member non-verbal sentences

Compare 3.3.2. One-member sentences without a verb $\text{ExD, ExD}_C$.

Notation:
words with $\text{ExD}$ are *emphasized*. 

206
3. Rules of annotation

1. **Lékaře!**
   physician

2. Pěkný víkend!
   nice weekend

3. Vztyk!
   up-to-your-feet

### 3.1.3.2. Ellipsis of predicate when repeated

1. Kristýna přinesla růži, Jiří fialky.
   Christine brought rose George violets

2. Kateřina cestuje vlakem do Kolína, my do Kopolno autobusem
   Catherine goes by-train to Kolín we to Kopidlno by-bus
3. Rules of annotation

3.1.3.3. Ellipsis of predicate in clauses introduced by conjunctions jak(o) (like), než(íl) (than)

Afun ExD is used if these conjunctions are not followed by a sentence with a predicate or a sentence member that gets afun Adv according to the rule quoted in the part advjakne in 3.2.5. Adverbials (and borderline cases) and esp. also in 3.6.9. Phrases of comparison with conjunctions jako (as), než (than). (The sentence member gets Adv if it relates in some close way to the node immediately above the conjunction - it is of the same type and it itself might fulfil the role of the member it modifies (lépe než dobře better than well, více než pět more than five, široký jako vysoký wide as high)

Notation:
words with ExD are emphasized.

1. Zavěsil to níž než Tonda obrázek
    he-hanged it lower than Tony picture
    He hanged it lower than Tony had hanged the picture.

2. Bohouš je zdravý jako ryba
    Bohouš is fit as fish
3. Rules of annotation

3.1.3.4. Ellipsis of predicate in sayings and proverbs

1. Já o voze, ty o koze
   I about carriage you about goat
   We are at cross purposes

3.1.3.5. Ellipsis of a verb in verbo-nominal predicates

If a copula is deleted with a verbo-nominal predicate, the subject (Sb) and the nominal part (Pnom) as well as all other modifications depending on the copula get the afun ExD. There are exceptions to this rule mentioned in the part 3.1.4.1. Ellipsis of copula with some verbo-nominal predicates.

Notation:
words with ExD are emphasized.

1. Pátrání zastaveno.
   investigation stopped

2. Puška lepší než hlídací pes
   gun better than watch dog

3. Pohřeb zítra
   funeral tomorrow
3. Rules of annotation

3.1.3.6. Ellipsis of components of complex verbal forms

If the auxiliary verb byť (to be) - which in a full predicate is assigned afun $\text{AuxV}$, see predsloz - occurs without its meaningful verb on which it would have been suspended, it is assigned afun $\text{ExD}$ (e.g. if the sentence Budu (I will) should mean Budu jíst (I will eat)).

**Notation:**

words with $\text{ExD}$ are bold-faced.

1. \[\text{Budu!} \]
   \[\text{I-will!} \]

2. Doufal jsem, že budeme malovat, ale nebudeme
   
   I-hoped Aux that we-shall paint-the-flat, but we-won’t
   
   I hoped we shall be painting the flat, but we won’t.

3.1.3.7. Ellipses of a transgressive in constructions with complement

The problem of these constructions is described in the part 2.6.6.8. Complement with elided transgressive $\text{Atv}$, $\text{AtvV}$. The missing transgressive would be the complement.

**Notation:**

words with $\text{ExD}$ are emphasized.

1. \[\text{Jan vstoupil hlavu skloněnou.} \]
   
   John entered head inclined
3. Rules of annotation

2.

Rodák z Moravy, strávil strýc celý život v Praze.
A native from Moravia, our uncle spent his whole life in Prague.

3.3.1.4. Ellipsis solved without afun ExD

3.1.4.1. Ellipsis of copula with some verbo-nominal predicates

There exist expressions that commonly occur with a copula as a nominal part of the predicate and as such can be deleted. If the copula is present, then these constructions are analyzed according to the rules for verbo-nominal predicate quoted in part 2.1.6.1. the structure of verbal-nominal predicate (the copula is assigned afun Pred, the dependent nominal part gets the afun Pnom).

If the copula is absent, the function of Pred is taken over by the nominal part and this part then has the function of a full predicate (all modifications depend on it).

Expressions that belong to this group are given by the following list: třeba, nutno (necessary), možno, záhodno (possible) (or, as the case may be, their negative counterparts).

1.

Za hodinu možno házet kamením.
In an hour it is possible to throw stones.
3. Rules of annotation

2. Třeba zajistit pořádek.
necessary to-secure order
It is necessary to secure order.

3.1.4.2. Ellipsis of a predicate adjective

The deletion in this case results in problematic constructions. The dependent member is assigned a fun Adv. In the sentence below the word nemocný (sick) is missing, the modification na nervy (on nerves) is thus suspended under jsem (I-am).

1. Jsem na nervy.
I-am on nerves
I am in a nervous state/I am nervy.

3.1.4.3. Ellipsis of an adjective between a noun and an adverb

The adverb may sometimes take over the function of an attribute. This happens when an adjective is deleted from a full construction (mostly derived from a passive: platby požadované předem payments required in advance). See also the part 2.3.4.7. Non-agreeing attribute expressed by an adverb.

1. Platby předem.
Payments advance
Payments in advance.
3. Rules of annotation

3.1.4.4. Ellipsis of subject

Sentences with a deleted subject part are not considered as incomplete sentences, we do not speak about ellipsis. See also the part 2.1.2.2. Modifying predicate.

3.1.4.5. Ellipsis of the governing clause

When a governing clause that need not be repeated is deleted, we get a sentence in the form of a dependent clause. Its predicate is assigned $\text{Pred}$ rather than the relevant syntactic function that it would obtain if it were included in a full complex sentence, or afun $\text{ExD}$.

1. \[ \text{že ji pozdravuji.} \]
   that her I-greet
   \((\text{Tell her}) \text{ that I am sending her my greetings.}\)

2. \[ \text{protože mám hlad.} \]
   because I-have hunger
   \(\text{Because I am hungry.}\)
3. Rules of annotation

3.1.4.6. Ellipsis of counted units

Numerals (a numerical expression of a number), even if not accompanied by the units they count, are regarded as sentence parts with the function that the node appurtenant to the unit would acquire.

An exception to this rule (i.e. the numerical expression gets ExD) is the type of coordination illustrated in the last example, where the given treatment is required by the overall structure of the sentence.

1. setrval jeden z řezníků
   stayed one of butchers
   One of the butchers lingered on.

2. odbilo jedenáct
   it-struck eleven

3. od šesti se chodí do školy
   from six Refl go to school
3. Rules of annotation

4. 

```
dožil
 se
 AuxT
 osmdesáti
 Obj
```

dožil se osmdesáti
he-lived-to Refl eighty
He lived as long as eighty.

5. 

```
mladíci
 od
 AuxP
 15
 Atr
 do
 AuxP
 18
 Atr
```

mladíci od 15 do 18
youths from 15 to 18

6. 

```
mladíci
 od
 AuxP
 15
 ExD
 do
 AuxP
 18
 Atr
```

mladíci od 15 do 18 let
youths from 15 to 18 years

3.1.4.7. Representation of the determination of proportion

Deletion often occurs with expressions of proportion (esp. numerical proportion), when the word *poměr* (proportion) is omitted. If this word is present, it gets its conventional afun:
3. Rules of annotation

If the word *poměr* (proportion) is omitted, its syntactic function is taken over by the first member of the proportion:

Viktorka vyhrála 3:0.
Viktorka won 3:0
3. Rules of annotation

3.1.4.8. Demonstrative pronouns ten, ta, to (that)

These pronouns stand for a sentence member, so that no ellipsis is concerned. However, if accompanied by the word which this pronoun refers to, this word itself fulfils the given function and the pronoun functions as its Atr.

1. On byl ten třetí.
   He was that third

2. Z těch 12 statečných se tři rozutekli.
   Of those 12 courageous ones three ran away.

3.1.4.9. Deletion of a noun after a preposition

In some cases only the preposition is left in the sentence in place of a prepositional group. If this is a collocation (phraseme), the preposition can take over the function of the member that it would introduce. E.g. in the sentence jsem pro (I am for) the preposition pro gets afun Adv (this function would be assigned to the deleted word, e.g. návrh proposal, přijetí acceptance, schválení approval, usnesení decision, ...). If a collocation is not the case, and the deletion is just occasional (e.g. náhle zmizel za ... suddenly he disappeared behind ...), the preposition gets its usual afun AuxP and nothing is suspended on it.
3. Rules of annotation

1. Jsem pro
   I-am for

2. Obsluhuje nahoře bez.
   she-serves on-top without
   *She is a topless waitress.*

3.3.2. One-member sentences without a verb ExD, ExD_Co

3.2.1. INFO EXD2

One-member verbless sentences also belong to the afun ExD (see part 3.2.2. Representation of one-member verbless sentences); there are several types of these sentences all treated in the same way (part 3.2.3. Types of one-member verbless sentences).

3.2.2. Representation of one-member verbless sentences

One-member sentences not containing a verb are assigned afun ExD.

Nedělní Lidové noviny.
Sunday Lidové noviny.
3. Rules of annotation

3.2.3. Types of one-member verbless sentences

1. Nominal
   a) nouns:
      i) Škola!
         school
      ii) Nedělní Lidové noviny.
         Sunday Lidové noviny.

   b) adjectives:
      i) Skvělé!
         Excellent!
      ii) Krásná!
         Beautiful!

   c) adverbs
      i) Znamenitě!
         Remarkably!
      ii) Kdepak!
         Not-at-all!

2. Vocatives:

   Franto!
   Franta!

3. Interjections:

   Bum!
   Crash!
3. Rules of annotation

If the Vocative or the interjection is embedded (e.g. Franto, pojď sem! Franta, come here!, Hej, neviš, kam jde? Hi, don’t you happen to know where he is going?), they get afun ExD (see 3.5.5. A syntactically non-incorporated sentence part or sentential form; ellipsis; an independent sentence part; vocative; interjection Exd_Pa).

In some cases, the interjection may have the function Pred (e.g. Hybaj domů! Rush home!; see the part 3.2.1.4. Simple verbal predicate.

One-member infinitival sentences get the afun Pred (Být pořád mladý! To be young all the time, Nemít tolik práce. Not to have so much work).

A special case of one-member sentences is constituted by the words ano (yes), ne (no), ni (not), ba (even so), bat’ (even so) and words similar to those. If they stand alone (see ex. (1)), they are assigned afun ExD, in a similar vein as other one member sentences. It is often the case that a sentence is attached to these words; this is formally treated as coordination, be these words in a relation to the attached sentences (ex. (2)) or not (ex. (3)); in both cases, the given words are assigned afun ExD_Co.

1. Ano.
   Yes.

2. Ne, šel jsem na pivo
   No I-went aux for beer
   No, I went to have a beer.
3. Rules of annotation

Bat’, největší frajer jsem tady já
Even so, the toughest daredevil here is me.

3.4. Relations between sentences and sentence parts (other than dependency)

3.4.1. Coordination (sentential, of sentence parts) Coord, <afun> _Co

3.4.1.1. INFO_CO

Part 3.4.1.2. Specification of coordination specifies what is understood by coordination here; its representation in our annotation scheme is presented in a voluminous part 3.4.1.3. Treatment of coordination, which is subdivided into several subparts. Cases of multiple coordination are dealt with in part 4.1.3.1. Multiple coordination. Coordinated constructions often end by words implicating that the list is not complete (aj. etc.); these cases are described in part 4.1.3.2. Non-standard termination of a coordinated list. The “false” relative clauses (introduced by což) are discussed in 4.1.3.3. Coordination in sentences with což (which), přičemž (whilst).

In 4.1.3.4. Coordinating conjunctions we present a list of coordinating conjunctions, followed by instructions what to do with such conjunctions that consist in more than one word (4.1.3.5. Multiple coordinating expressions). Coordination may go beyond the boundary of sentences; these cases are exemplified in 4.1.3.6. One-member sentential coordination. Some special case of coordination are discussed in part 4.1.3.7. Coordination with a colon and 4.1.3.8. Compound words divided by a hyphen.

The next part is devoted to the issue of coordination of prepositional cases (4.1.4.1. Coordinated prepositional cases) and embedded clauses (4.1.4.2. Coordination of
3. Rules of annotation

embedded clauses). The suffix \_Co is not assigned to prepositions or to subordinate conjunctions.

A special problem is that of modification of coordination; the instructions how to represent such cases are given in the concluding part 3.4.1.5. Joint modification of coordinated members.

3.4.1.2. Specification of coordination

A relation of coordination may occur between two or more sentence parts, two or more clauses - be they main clauses or dependent ones. On the analytical level, coordination of clauses and of words is not distinguished, both are assigned the same analytic function. Similarly, we do not distinguish between different types of coordination (conjunction, disjunction, etc.); they all get the same afun without any further specification.

Any sentence members can be related by coordination: predicates, subjects, objects, attributes etc. Their afun is composed of their function - Pred, Sb, Obj, Atr - and a suffix \_Co, which indicates that the given node is a member of a coordinated construction.

It is important to ensure that all members standing in a coordinated construction get the same function (e.g. it is impossible to have Obj_Co and Adv_Co standing side by side in a single coordinated construction). If such a case seemingly occurs, then the construction should be treated as a sentential coordination with a deleted predicate in one of its parts. This is most frequently the case with the combination of Adv - Pnom and Atv - Adv:

1. 

\[ 
\text{Přišel sám a hned.} \\
\text{he-came alone and immediately.} 
\]
3. Rules of annotation

3.4.1.3. Treatment of coordination

The means of rendering coordination are first of all coordinating conjunctions, connecting expressions and also punctuation marks, e.g. a comma. The cases when coordination is expressed by means of multiword expressions is described in part 4.1.3.5. Multiple coordinating expressions. In the tree structure, these means have a node of their own assigned afun Coord. They are the governing node of the whole coordinated string.

In case of coordinated predicates of main clauses the node with afun Coord is suspended immediately below the node of the root of the tree ((1)). In other cases, the node with afun Coord is suspended on the governing node, which is modified by the nodes in coordination ((2)).

If there are some extra marks with individual parts of coordination, they are assigned afun AuxG and are suspended on the corresponding parts ((3); see also 2.8.4.7. A superfluous punctuation mark (three dots)).

It may happen that the conjunction a (and) is a part of some abbreviation (apod. and similarly, atd etc.). Since the abbreviation is written without spaces and as such is represented by a single node, the function Coord is assumed by the whole abbreviation (see (4)). For the treatment of these abbreviations if written in several words, see below part 4.1.3.2. Non-standard termination of a coordinated list.

Coordination function can be represented in the sentence also by three fullstops. If this is the case, the afun Coord is assigned to the last of them; the preceding two are suspended on the last one and are assigned AuxG ((5)).

1. \[
\text{Později utekl z vězení a opustil republiku} \\
\text{later he-fled from prison and left Republic}
\]
3. Rules of annotation

2. vláda
   minulá nebo současná
   government past or present

3. uzrály
   a) švestky, b) meruňky
   ripened a) plums b) apricots

4. četla
   časopisy, noviny apod.
   she-read journals newspapers and-similarly

5. očekávám
   Tondu, Karlu, Frantu ...
   I-expect Tony Charles Frank ...
3. Rules of annotation

4.1.3.1. Multiple coordination

With a multiple coordination (i.e. the coordination construction has more than two members), more than one marker of coordination is usually present (every two members of the coordination are delimited by some marker). The afun Coord is then assigned to the last marker at the right-hand-side (usually this is a conjunction, but if a conjunction is not present then it might be a comma etc.). This mark of coordination becomes the governor, other coordination marks being its daughters. Commas are assigned afun AuxX, words (e.g. the repeated conjunctions a (and)) get AuxY, graphic symbols (e.g. also all three dots if they are not rightmost nodes) are assigned afun AuxG.

1. ptali se na mámu, tátu, psa a včerejší počasí
   - they-inquired Refl about mom, pap, dog and yesterday weather

2. Karel, Bohouš a Venca jedli
   - Karel, Bohouš and Venca were-eating
3. Rules of annotation

3. ... zaplatili: Bohouš, Venca ... Karel a Oskar
     ... payed: Bohouš, Venca ... Karel and Oskar

4.1.3.2. Non-standard termination of a coordinated list

The list of the members of coordination is sometimes terminated by words that do not have the same syntactic value as other members of the coordination. These words mostly express that the listing is incomplete and they are often written in an abbreviated form; if this abbreviation is represented by a single node including also the coordinating conjunction (apod., atd., etc., aj., ... (and-so-on)), it becomes (in accordance with the rules in the part 3.4.1.3. Treatment of coordination) a node of coordination, i.e. it is assigned afun Coord.

jmenujme pole, lesy, budovy aj.
let-us-mention fields, woods, buildings etc.

However, difficulties arise when the coordinated listing is terminated by more than one node. One of the following three cases may obtain then:

**Cases of collocation:**

The list of such collocations:
* a tak dále (and so on)
* a tak podobně (and so similarly)
* a podobně (and similarly)
* et cetera
These collocations are regarded as so-called connecting coordinating expressions, described in more detail below in the part 2.7.7.5. Particles forming a part of connecting expressions and comprising also (or first of all) multiple conjunctions described in part 4.1.3.5. Multiple coordinating expressions.

In the representations of these constructions, the coordinating conjunction governs the whole coordination and the other nodes are suspended on it with afuns AuxY; if such constructions consist of two words, the last word is suspended on the first one ((2)).

1. *jmenujme pole, lesy, budovy et cetera
   let-us-mention fields, woods, buildings et cetera

2. *jmenujme pole, lesy, budovy a tak dále
   let-us-mention fields, woods, buildings and so on

Cases of ellipsis in which after the last member of coordination there remains just an adjective (i.e. the adjunct of the last word)

Annotation is carried out according to the rules on ellipsis (see 3.3.1. Ellipsis ExD, ExD_Co), i.e. the adjective (which is a remnant of the last member of coordination) is suspended on the node with Coord and is assigned afun ExD_Co.
3. Rules of annotation

1. *jmenujme

pole, lesy, budovy a jiné
let-us-mention fields, woods, buildings and other

2. *jmenujme

Pepu, Aloise, Antonína a další
let-us-mention Pepa, Alois, Antonín and further

Other cases (mostly lists with longer terminations)

In these cases the rule given above in the part 3.4.1.2. Specification of coordination is used; the respective termination of the list is regarded as a clause of itself (which often does not contain a predicate), resulting in a coordination of clauses, where in the first clause the initial members of the listing will be placed in their corresponding positions and the second clause will be formed in a non-standard way.
3. Rules of annotation

1. Jmenujme pole, lesy, budovy a tak dále až do úplného vyčerpání.

2. My tam nemůžeme, přičemž opačná cesta je volná.

2. Je označována za kubismus, což je ignorantství.

4.1.3.3. Coordination in sentences with což (which), přičemž (whilst)

Complex sentences with expressions což (which) (and all its inflected forms, including the forms with prepositions přičemž, pročež, načež, nacož) are analyzed as coordination, the head node being the comma. These words are assigned afuns according to the function they represent in the clause they introduce (přičemž (whilst) obtaining mostly the afun Adv).

1. My tam nemůžeme, přičemž opačná cesta je volná.

2. Je označována za kubismus, což je ignorantství.

it is denoted as cubism which is ignorance.
4.1.3.4. Coordinating conjunctions

The following conjunctions (some of them consisting of more than a single word) may have a coordinating function:

*a, a proto, a přesto, a tak, a tedy, ale, ale proto, ale přesto, anebo, ani, ani-ani, aniž, avšak, ba, bud'-a nebo, bud'-anebo, bud'-nebo, či, i, i-i, jak-tak, jednak-jednak, jenže, leč, nebo, nebot’, nicméně, nýbrž, ovšem, proto, přece, přesto, sice-ale, sice-avšak, sice-nicméně, však, vždyt’, zato*

The conjunction *aniž* may in a sense function also as a subordinating one (*AuxC*), the conjunction *přece* may occur in the function of *AuxY*, the conjunction *ani* has often an emphasizing meaning (*AuxZ*).

Instructions how to treat conjunctions included in the above list are presented in the next section 4.1.3.5. Multiple coordinating expressions.

4.1.3.5. Multiple coordinating expressions

Some expressions introducing coordination (and as such included in the above list) consist in more than a single word. This means that they are represented in the tree as more than a single node; however, for the overall representation of the coordinating function a single node is needed, to be assigned *afun Coord*. This is why one word of the coordinating expression is singled out to get *Coord* and to be the head of the whole coordination. Other parts of the coordinating expression are suspended under this main node (if there are more such words, they are suspended as sisters) and they are assigned *afun AuxY*.

Instructions how to choose the main node are given in part 3.2.7.7. Parts of multi-word constructions, some particles, decayed parenthesis *AuxY*. With those components that are not immediate neighbours (e.g. *sice-ale* that’s-true - but), as well as with those that are immediate neighbours (e.g. *ale proto* but therefore) the head node usually is the node with a more general coordinative meaning (*ale but, a and*).
3. Rules of annotation

1. Vyhnali ho, *ale* proto se *nemusíš* zlobit
   they-expelled him *but* therefore *Refl* you-need-not be-angry

2. Šel sice pryč, *ale* darebákem zůstane
   he-went that’s-true away *but* rascal *he-remains*

4.1.3.6. One-member sentential coordination

Afun *Coord* is often assigned also to conjunctions that refer to the preceding context, which is outside the sentence under analysis. Since in our annotation scheme the analysis should not go beyond the boundaries of sentences, such a coordination physically has a single node in the given tree.

1. *a* tak nedosáhlí slibovaného vzestupu
   *and so* they-did-not-reach promised raise
   *and that’s why they failed*

2. *ale* všechny lidi oklamat nejde
   *but* all people to-deceive it-is-not-possible
   *but to deceive all people is impossible*
3. Rules of annotation

Avšak převážila tendence jiná
yet prevailed tendency other
Yet another tendency prevailed.

4.1.3.7. Coordination with a colon

Afun Coord is also used in representation of sport results and temporal data.

1. Viktorka vyhrála 3:0
   Viktorka won 3:0

2. zápas začíná v 10:15
   match starts at 10:15
3. Rules of annotation

4.1.3.8. Compound words divided by a hyphen

Compound words divided by a hyphen are represented as a coordination.

\[ \text{česko-německé vztahy} \]

Czech-German relations

3.4.1.4. Coordinated members introduced by means of AuxP or AuxC

Analytic functions AuxP_Co and AuxC_Co are not used. The suffix _Co is attached to the sentence parts introduced by these members.

4.1.4.1. Coordinated prepositional cases

The suffix _Co is not attached to prepositions. In case of coordinated prepositional cases, the suffix Co_ is attached to the afun of the noun, i.e. Obj_Co, Adv_Co, Atr_Co rather than AuxP_Co.

Coordinated sentence parts expressed by a prepositional form are represented in different ways, in relation to the fact whether the preposition is present with both coordinated parts or if there is only a single preposition present.

1. přijíždějí ze Slovenska a z východních zemí
they-come from Slovakia and from Eastern countries
3. Rules of annotation

2. působí v Gaze a Jerichu
   s/he-operates in Gaza and Jericho

It may happen that one of the coordinated members is missing (there are only two prepositions in coordination and only the second of them is accompanied by a noun):

1. šel do i z lesa
   he-walked to and from woods

2. šel především do, ale i z lesa
   he-walked first-of-all to but also from woods
4.1.4.2. Coordination of embedded clauses

Coordination of embedded clauses is treated in a similar vein as that of prepositional cases. The suffix _Co is assigned to the afuns of the predicates of these clauses (i.e. Sb-Co, Obj-Co, Adv-Co, ...) rather than to the subordinating conjunctions.

The treatment of coordinated clauses depends on the fact whether the subordinating conjunction is repeated or not.

1. slíbil, že knihu koupí a že přítele navštíví
   he-promised that book-Acc he-will-buy and that friend-Acc he-will-visit

2. slíbil, že knihu koupí a přítele navštíví
   he-promised that book-Acc he-will-buy and friend-Acc he-will-visit
3. Rules of annotation

3. šel, protože a poněvadž chtěl
he-went because and since he-wanted

4. šel, především protože, ale i poněvadž chtěl
he-went first-of-all because and also since he-wanted

3.4.1.5. Joint modification of coordinated members

A joint modification of a coordinated string must be reflected also in its tree structure. The same rules obtain for the assignment of afuns in case of coordination of sentence parts and in that of coordination of predicates (i.e. of main or embedded clauses).

Those elements of the sentence that depend only on one part of the coordination are suspended according to the general rules; those elements that depend on the coordinated construction as a whole are suspended on the node with afun Coord and are assigned their afuns according to their function (without the suffix _Co). This convention makes it possible to differentiate between a coordinated member and a member modifying the whole coordination. The latter node may be e.g. a joint attribute to a coordinated object, but also a joint subject or other modification to a coordinated predicate.
3. Rules of annotation

The members modifying the coordination as a whole are printed in *emphasized* letters.

1. dělníci nainstalovali dřevěné židle a stojany workers installed wooden chairs and stands

2. Jana zvedla a podala Olze knížku Jane picked-up and handed-over to-Olga book

3. velmi těžký a rozměrný fragment very heavy and bulky fragment
3.4.2. Apposition \texttt{Apos, <afun>_Ap}

4.2.1. \texttt{INFO _AP}

After a specification of the function of apposition in the part 4.2.2. Specification of apposition, we present an account of how apposition is formally treated in our scenario (part 4.2.3. Representation of apposition). This part also contains a list of possible expressions that may introduce apposition. In the part 4.2.4. Distinguishing apposition from other relations we attempt to differentiate apposition from other sentence relations with which it might be mistakenly interchanged (dependency, coordination or parenthesis).

4.2.2. Specification of apposition

Apposition is a relation that makes it possible to render the same 'idea' in several different ways. The members standing in apposition are the same sentence part, they usually are in the same case and they can be interchanged:

1. se žádostí se obrátili na O. Koktana, správce vepřína with request \texttt{Refl} they-turned to O. Koktan, manager of-pigsties

The condition requiring the same form (case) need not be met if the members in the apposition relation are adverbials, because the repertoire of the means for the expression of adverbials is very large:

1. usmrtili ho tajně, např. vyšší dávkou morfia they-killed him secretely \texttt{e.g. by-higher dosis of-morphine}
3. Rules of annotation

We differ from Šmilauer’s understanding in that our specification of apposition is narrower: we do not regard as apposition the types of “specializing” attribute (as e.g. rozímký sultánky raisins sultans, slečna sousedka miss neighbour, my Češi we Czechs, see 2.3.4.2. Agreeing attribute expressed by a noun) and also adverbials as dole pod podlahou down below the floor, letos v únoru this year in February, nahoru na kopeček up to the hill (see 3.2.5.4. Problematic cases of temporal modifications and 3.2.5.5. Problems of local adverbial).

Similarly, we do not regard as apposition the case when seemingly apposited members have no place to be suspended on (the member for the assignment of afun Apos is missing, see below): nodes for such elements are suspended side by side, without apposition.

However, we do regard as apposition items in a questionnaire or list divided by a colon or by some other graphic symbol (see ex. (6) in the following part).

4.2.3. Representation of apposition

The following expressions are typical for introducing an apposition:

aneb, a sice, a tedy, a to, čili, jako, jako je, jako např., jako například, např., například, neboli, tak třeba, tedy, tj., to jest, to znamená, tzn.

The list is not (even cannot be) complete, i.e. apposition may be introduced by other expressions as well and the decision is up to the annotator. At the same time, an inclusion of an expression in this list does not necessarily mean that a presence of such an expression in a sentence always indicates that a relation of apposition is present.

In addition, apposition may be introduced by mere graphic symbols, such as comma, dash, colon, brackets.

According to the current conventions, apposition is represented in the tree structure in the same way as coordination, i.e. the respective means of expression are assigned the afun Apos and the members that stand in an apposition relation are suspended on this governing node; their afuns are composed from the label denoting their function (Sb, Obj, Atr, ...) and from the suffix _Ap.

When deciding which node is assigned afun Apos, the following rules hold:

• If the connecting expression is a single node, then the situation is clear (see exx. (1), (6), (7)).
• If the connecting expression is a word (or an abbreviation) preceded by a comma, the afun Apos is assigned to this word and the comma is suspended under it (exx. (2), (4)).
3. Rules of annotation

- If the abbreviation is followed by (its) fullstop, the fullstop is suspended under the abbreviation (according to the rules of punctuation, see 2.8.4.5. Punctuation marks after an abbreviation (fullstop), here ex. (2)).
- If the means for apposition consists of a string of words, the last word in the string is the governor of the whole expression, other elements of the string being its dependents and getting the afun _AuxY_ (see the rules given in part 2.7.7.7. Multi-word apposition expressions, and ex. (4) below).
- If the second member of the apposition is separated by brackets (or by dashes etc.), the first of these symbols is assigned afun _Apos_ and the second is suspended on the first (with afun _AuxG_; see the rules in part 2.8.4.3. Bracketing _AuxG_ and ex. (3) below).

As ex. (7) shows, apposition allows also for some unusual attributes.

1. Odpoví běžným řešením: devalvací it-will-respond by-current solution devalvation

2. Legalizovala euthanasii, tj. usmrcení she-legalised euthanasia, ie. killing
3. Rules of annotation

3. zabývali se postavením UK (Univerzity Karlovy)
they-dealt with-position of-UK (University of-Charles)

4. stanovil symboly, a to znak a prapor
he-determined symbols and this(is) emblem and banner

5. bojují dvě síly: Láska čili Harmonie a Nenávist neboli Svár
fight two powers Love or Harmony and Hatred or Conflict
3. Rules of annotation

6. 

- **pohlaví**: ženské
  - **sex**: female

7. 

- **Mirek, v Klánovicích barman, nyní mistr**
  - **Mirek in Klánovice barman, now foreman**
  - **Mirek, a barman in Klánovice, now a foreman.**

4.2.4. Distinguishing apposition from other relations

Apposition has some points of contact with other sentence relations: dependency, coordination and parenthesis.

If an assignment of an attributive (adjunct) function is possible, then it has priority over the appositional specification. Compare the close attributive relation in

případ úředníka předůnorového ministerstva vnitra JUDr. Zdeňka Tomana
  - **case of-clerk of-pre-February Ministry of-Interior JUDr Zdenek Toman**

with a (loose, free) appositional relation in

říká Ivan Medek, vedoucí odboru vnitřní politiky presidentské kanceláře
  - **says Ivan Medek, head of-section of-interior affairs of-presidential office**

The criterion for distinguishing these two relations - an attributive and an appositional one - is supplied by the fact that with the appositional relation, the two “ideas” are separated by some formal (graphic) symbol (in our example, it is the comma).
3. Rules of annotation

In contrast to coordination, the two (or more) members standing in an appositional relation express the same content (or its specification, as the case may be).

The difference between apposition and parenthesis is discussed in more detail in part 5.1.4. The borderline between parenthesis and apposition.

The appositional relation must be also distinguished from the so-called free adjunction (see 3.6.13. Freely adjoined sentence parts), even though the means of expression of these two relations are sometimes the same. Cf. the example of apposition: pochází z Čech, a to ze Žižkova (he comes from Czechia, and that from Žižkov) as compared to a freely adjoined sentence part in přidělili peníze, a to brněnským lékařům (they have allocated money, and that to the Brno physicians).

3.5. Parenthesis

3.5.1. General rules

5.1.1. INFO_PA

In the first part, 5.1.2. Specification of parenthesis, parenthesis and its types are specified, followed (in 5.1.3. Representation of parenthesis) by a description of its representation in the tree structure and by a short specification of the distinction between parenthesis and apposition (in 5.1.4. The borderline between parenthesis and apposition).

The next four parts are devoted to the four types of parenthesis: 5.2.1. Representation of AuxY_Pa deals with particles that relate to the whole sentence; 3.5.3. An independent sentential form (containing a predicate) Pred_Pa (part 5.3.1. Representation of Pred_Pa) describes parenthesis that includes a predicate of its own but is not syntactically incorporated into the sentence; a parenthesis that is syntactically incorporated into the sentence, be it the case that it includes a predicate (it has a form of an embedded clause) or is a simple sentence part is described in 5.4.1. Representation of <afun>_Pa. Section 5.5.1. Representation of ExD_Pa includes instructions for other kinds of parenthesis that are not covered by the previous sections (either a predicate is missing in the parenthesis, or it is a vocative or an independent sentence part).

5.1.2. Specification of parenthesis

Semantically, parenthesis concerns an additional adjunction of a remark to the statement included in the sentence. The speaker usually uses parenthesis to explain something, to add some remarks, to express his/her emotions, to apologize, to refer to something, etc.
3. Rules of annotation

From the formal point of view, the necessary condition for the assignment of afun with the suffix \_Pa is a graphic separation marking — by brackets, dashes, commas. If this condition is not fulfilled, a different afun should be assigned. E.g. in the sentence *musím se, bohužel, omluvit* (I must, unfortunately, apologize) the word *bohužel* (unfortunately) gets afun AuxZ\_Pa, while in *musím se bohužel omluvit* it gets afun AuxY.

There are four possible assignments of afuns, according to the following four possible types of parenthesis:

1. If a particle without a graphic separation mark got afun AuxY, it gets - when graphically separated - AuxY\_Pa (see 3.5.2. A `frozen` parenthesis AuxY\_Pa and 2.7.7.2. Particles pertaining to the whole utterance).
2. In case parenthesis does not violate the sentence structure, it is assigned an afun composed of the value of its function in the sentence (Adv, Atr, ...) and the suffix \_Pa and it is suspended in the place where it belongs (see 3.5.4. A syntactically incorporated sentence part with <afun>\_Pa).
3. If the parenthesis has a form of a whole sentence (with a predicate) and it does not fit syntactically into the sentence structure, it gets afun Pred\_Pa and it is suspended under the predicate of that clause into which it is embedded (see 3.5.3. An independent sentential form (containing a predicate) Pred\_Pa).
4. The rest of the cases of parenthesis are assigned afun ExD\_Pa (this concerns the case in which a predicate is missing and some further cases described in 3.5.5. A syntactically non-incorporated sentence part or sentential form; ellipsis; an independent sentence part; vocative; interjection Exd\_Pa).

5.1.3. Representation of parenthesis

The graphic symbols separating a parenthesis are sisters suspended under the governing node of the parenthesis:

1.

její (neobyčejně vyvinutá) řadra
her (extraordinarily developed) bosom
3. Rules of annotation

As a rule, prepositions and subordinating conjunctions are not assigned the suffix \(^\_\text{P}_a\). If they govern a parenthesis, they get their usual aux \(\text{AuxP}\) or \(\text{AuxC}\), and the suffix \(^\_\text{P}_a\) is assigned to the node that is suspended on them.

1. složil ji (na chodbě) poklonu
   he-paid her (on corridor) compliment

A parenthesis may consist of more than a single member; in such a case the individual parts of the parenthesis are suspended side by side and the separating symbols are daughters of the outer ones.

1. souhlasila - po chvíli váhání jednoznačně - s návrhem
   she-agreed - after moment of hesitation univocally - with proposal

5.1.4. The borderline between parenthesis and apposition

With nouns: the condition for the assignment of apposition is the identity of the (case) forms, or abbreviations:

1. kulhavý ostříž (Antonín Vyšinka)
   limping lobby-falcon (Antonín Vyšinka)

2. Žižkovská strana starých časů (ŽSSČ)
   Žižkov party of old times (ŽSSČ)
3. Rules of annotation

If the cases differ, mostly parenthesis is concerned:

1. ve svých hrách (Král T. a Ráj)
in his plays-Loc (King T.-Nom and Paradise-Nom)

2. na rozdíl od jeho nástupce (Vojta Vtipný)
in contrast to his successor-Gen (Vojta-Nom Vtipný)

As mentioned above in part 4.2.2. Specification of apposition, in case of adverbials the condition of the identity of cases need not be obeyed, cf. the apposition relation in

1. usmrtili ho tajně, např. vyšší dávkou morfia
they-killed him secretly, e.g. by-higher dose of-morphine

3.5.2. A ‘frozen’ parenthesis AuxY_Pa

5.2.1. Representation of AuxY_Pa

The function AuxY_Pa is assigned to particles that relate to the contents of the whole utterance, i.e. the types traditionally called sentential adverbs. As mentioned above, an assignment of an afun with the suffix _Pa is conditioned by a graphic separation from the rest of the sentence (e.g. by commas). Without such a separation, just the function AuxY is assigned, see 3.2.7.7. Parts of multi-word constructions, some particles, decayed parenthesis AuxY

Words that can be assigned afun AuxY_Pa are given by a list. This list equals the list of those words with AuxY that specify a whole utterance, the only difference being a graphic separation.

The list of potential AuxY_Pa: aby, at’, at’ už, bohudík, bohužel, jasně, kdyby, kupodivu, možná, naopak, například, nicméně, nuže, opravdu, ostatně, patrně, pravděpodobně, prostě, prý, přece jen, samozřejmě, snad, stejně, tedy, totiž, věru, vlastně, však, zřejmě, že

In the tree structure, a particle with afun AuxZ_Pa is suspended under the predicate of the given sentence (as is the case with AuxY as such). If the parenthesis contains more words belonging together (as e.g. přece jen, at’ už - not two independent particles as in například kupodivu for-example to-my-surprise) one part is suspended under the other, while the position of the governor will be occupied by that one that
3. Rules of annotation

is first in the string. This node gets afun \texttt{AuxY\_Pa}, while the second word gets only \texttt{AuxY}.

1. chybí mi, \textit{bohužel}, peníze
   lack me \textit{unfortunately} money
   \textit{unfortunately, I’m short of money}

2. udělal to, \textit{přeČ jen, dobrě}
   he-did it \textit{after} all \textit{well}

3.5.3. An independent sentential form (containing a predicate) \texttt{Pred\_Pa}

5.3.1. Representation of \texttt{Pred\_Pa}

Afun \texttt{Pred\_Pa} is assigned to the predicate (i.e. the node that would get afun \texttt{Pred}) of the parenthetical sentence, if the sentence is not syntactically included into the structure. This node is suspended under the predicate of the clause, in which parenthesis occurs, or, as the case may be, on the node with # (i.e. if the parenthesis is a complete sentence).

Afun \texttt{Pred\_Pa} is also assigned to expressions such as \textit{viz (see)}, \textit{srov. (compare)} etc., if these expressions are inserted in a sentence; if such an expression forms the main clause, it is assigned afun \texttt{Pred}).

Such constructions as \textit{jak uvedl ... (as quoted ...), jak řekl (as said ...)}, \textit{jak jsem se dozvěděl (as I heard)} are also assigned afun \texttt{Pred\_Pa}.  

247
3. Rules of annotation

Words with afun `Pred_Pa` are *emphasised*.

1. 

```
... 

později - musím se přiznat - jsem se styděl
later - I-must Refl confess - I-was Refl ashamed
```

2. 

```
... 

až umřete - at' je to co nejpozději - bude po radosti
after you-die - may is it the latest - it-will-be after joy
after you die - may it be as late as possible - the joy will be over
```

3. 

```
... 

to je podstatou problému, srov. příklady ze začátku
this is core of matter, cf. examples from beginning
```
3. Rules of annotation

4.

voda se, bych tak řekl, umoudřila
water Refl would so speak grew-wise
the water, so to speak, grew wise

Other examples:
1. bude-li po mně - a proč by nebyl -, bude schopný
   if he takes after me - and why shouldn’t he - he will be able
2. někde na hranicích, tuším v Roklince, se zastavili
   somewhere at the border, in Roklinka I guess, they stopped
3. přišlo už několik lidí, jsou to většinou úředníci, a usedají
   some people have come, they are mostly officials, and they are sitting down
4. vzbouzel se, jak maminka vyprávěla, časně
   he used to wake up, as mother related, early
5. Polsko, nelekejte se prosím, mělo 93 stran
   Poland, don’t get alarmed please, had 93 parties
6. dnes je, myslím, větší konkurence
   today, I believe, there is greater competition
7. proč to, prosím, nevyvedete
   why don’t you take him out, please

3.5.4. A syntactically incorporated sentence part with <afun>_Pa

5.4.1. Representation of <afun>_Pa

This way of representation is used with parenthetic sentence parts or, as the case may be, embedded clauses] that do not violate the sentence structure.

However, some constructions separated by commas are not regarded as parenthesis, which, of course, concerns embedded clauses, attributes separated by commas that are considered to be “free” attributes and get afun Ať x (e.g. děti, umístěné v ústavu, něco sebraly children, placed in the asylum, stole something), and complementation expressed by a transgressive (see 2.6.6.7. Complement expressed by a transgressive). The afuns with the suffix _Pa is used in these cases only if the given construction is separated by certain graphic symbols.
3. Rules of annotation

1. vrátil se (včera) z hospody
   he-returned Refl (yesterday) from pub

Further examples:
1. zvítězí-li varianta (k níž se přikláňí Klaus), bude zle
   if the variant (referred to positively by Klaus) prevails, things will go bad
2. kouká na nás králík (který je nejlepší na česneku)
   a rabbit is looking at us (which is best with garlic)

A special situation obtains if parenthesis is one of the members of coordination, which as a whole is not a parenthesis. In such a case the suffix _ Pa is not used because there is no place to suspend it.

nově (a nečekaně snadno) ustavený
newly (and unexpectedly easily) appointed

3.5.5. A syntactically non-incorporated sentence part or sentential form; ellipsis; an independent sentence part; vocative; interjection Exd_Pa

5.5.1. Representation of Exd_Pa

Afun Exd_Pa is assigned in the following cases:
3. Rules of annotation

- to all parts of parenthetic clauses, in which a predicate is deleted, be it the case that a full expression would have get a funct \( \text{Pred}_{Pa} \) (example (1) and (2)) or some \( \text{<afun>}_{Pa} \) (ex.(3); here a parenthetic clause would be concerned, with \( \text{Atr}_{Pa} \): \( \text{kerť hraje za Viktorii Žižkov who plays for Viktoria Žižkov} \),
- to all occurrences of vocatives (ex. (4)),
- to independent, extrapolated expressions (ex. (5)).

Words with \( \text{ExD}_{Pa} \) are *emphasized*.

1. 

\[
\begin{aligned}
\text{před smrtí, neznámo proč, si koupil tramvajenku} \\
\text{before death unknown why Reflex he-bought tram-pass}
\end{aligned}
\]

2. 

\[
\begin{aligned}
\text{ráda, bože, jak by ne, ležím} \\
\text{I-like my-goodness how would not I-lie-down} \\
\text{I like, my goodness why not, to lie down}
\end{aligned}
\]

3. 

\[
\begin{aligned}
\text{a hetriku dosáhl Marek Trval (Viktorie Žižkov)} \\
\text{and hat-trick scored Marek Trval (Viktorie Žižkov)}
\end{aligned}
\]
3.6. Complex phenomena

In this part we describe some phenomena that concern more than a single category and thus it is necessary to mention them in one section.

3.6.1. Direct speech

6.1.1. The meaning of direct speech

Direct speech reproduces what has been said (thought of) by someone in a direct way, word-for-word. The reporting clause indicates who uttered the speech, in which way, under which circumstances etc. Thus two layers are concerned, utterances by two speakers: the speaker who reports, and the speaker whose utterance is reproduced.

A semi-direct speech is not graphically marked by inverted commas and it uses only the third person, rather than three grammatical persons. The “improper direct speech” differs from direct speech only in writing: it is not separated from the reporter’s speech graphically. It is analyzed in the same way and according to the same criteria as direct speech.

In spite of the fact that direct speech is sometimes characterized as a free connection of sentences, we analyze it (be it proper, improper, or semi-direct) in the same vein as indirect speech proper.
6.1.2. representation of direct speech

Direct speech is often included in inverted commas. The reporting clause may be placed in front of the reported speech (separated by a colon), after it, or it may be inserted into the reported speech (in the two latter cases it is separated by comma(s)). The comma may be replaced by a question mark or an exclamation mark. All these punctuation marks are suspended on the governing node of the reported speech. Cf. 3.2.8.2. Terminal symbol of the sentence AuxK, 3.2.8.3. Comma AuxX, and 3.2.8.4. Punctuation, other graphic symbols AuxG (esp. the parts 2.8.4.3. Bracketing AuxG and 2.8.4.4. Introducing punctuation (colon)).

The relation between the reporting clause and the reported speech is represented in the following way:

1. The governor of the reporting clause is a verb that requires Obj or Sb, which are missing in the clause. (Sb will be missing if the reporting clause is in passive.) The governor of the reported speech is then assigned the function of the missing element, i.e. Obj or Sb.

This case is illustrated by five examples: in (1.a) the reporting clause is placed after the reported speech, note the placement of the nodes for the punctuation marks. In (1.b) and (1.c) the reporting clause is inserted into the reported speech: in (1.b), the reported speech consists of a single clause and the reporting clause is placed in the middle of it; in (1.c), the reporting clause is placed in between two coordinated clauses. Ex. (1.d) illustrates a situation when the reporting clause stands in front of the reported clause and has the function of Sb. The reported speech in (1.e) is not a complete sentence and therefore the afun ExD is assigned.

A note on the placement of punctuation marks in (1.b) and (1.c):
In (1.c) the reported speech is a coordination, therefore the comma after its first part (which is inside inverted commas) is used as a symbol for coordination (with afun Coord) and the remaining second comma is suspended as an introducing punctuation mark. On the other hand, we do not need a symbol of coordination (coordination is not the case) in (1.b), and thus both commas serve as separating punctuation marks.

a) "To věřím!" opáčila Cilka

that I-believe retorted Cilka
3. Rules of annotation

b) "Karel," řekl Tonda, "nepříšel.
Karel said Tonda did-not-come

c) "Karel nepříšel," řekl Tonda, "neměl čas."
Karel did-not-come said Tonda he-did-not-have time

d) Řeklo se: "Prší."
was-said Refl it-rains

e) "Borůvky," odpověděla.
blueberries she-answered
Examples of verbs with which the reported speech functions as Obj (in active):

- verbs of saying: pravit say, říci say, opačit return, odpovědět answer, ptát se ask
- verbs of information: oznámit announce, naznačit indicate
- verbs with an emotional load: vrčet growl
- verbs of sensation: slyšet hear
- verbs of volition: slíbit promise, nabízet offer, navrhovat propose, doporučovat recommend, radit advise, žádat require, prosit beg

Examples of verbs with which the reported speech functions as Sb:

- verbs of perception: znít v uších ears are singing
- verbs of thinking: napadnout occur, prolétnout hlavou flash through one’s mind

2. Cases for which the criterion given in (1) cannot be used, but it is possible to add into the reporting clause such verbs as a řekl (and he-said), řekl a (he-said and), přičemž řekl (while he said). The complex sentence is then analyzed as a coordination of two sentences, the governor of the reported speech gets the function ExD_Co (i.e. its own governor is missing).

In (2.c) and (2.d) there is no node that could be assigned the function of Coord, and therefore this situation is analyzed by means of ExD. In the complex sentence of (2.e) a part of the reporting speech a řekl (and he-said) is included, the conjunction a (and) fulfilling its normal coordinating function; however, the word řekl (he-said) is again deleted, and the nodes for hned (immediately) and je (is) which would depend on the deleted řekl are assigned a fun ExD_Co.

\[
\text{a)}
\]

to bude špatné, zapochyboval
that will-be bad he-doubted
3. Rules of annotation

b) "Karel," podrbal se, "nepřišel."
Karel he-scratched-his-head Refl did-not-come

c) Tonda se podrbal: "Karel zase nepřišel."
Tonda Refl scratched-his-head Karel again did-not-come

d) "Že je kluk na půdě?" poslouchá.
that is boy in loft he-is-listening
"The boy being in the loft?" he is listening.
3. Rules of annotation

3. It may sometimes happen that a statement, quotation etc. has some function other than that of a direct speech. The governor of such a statement is assigned a fun according to the function it represents (usually Adv). This way of representation is used only in case when no other way is possible.

3.6.2. Addresses and names of persons and institutions

**Warning**

All rules in this section hold primarily for Czech addresses and names. With elements taken over from foreign languages the rules presented in 3.6.10. Foreign words in the text should also (and preferentially) be taken into account.

6.2.1. Representation of addresses

If the address is written in a syntactically correct way, it is analyzed according to the general rules, i.e. its parts are suspended side by side with the function Adv.
3. Rules of annotation

With names of persons, the main part is the family name, the given name as well as all the titles being suspended on it, assigned afun A\text{tr}.

1. číšník Karel Č. bydlí ve 3. patře v Kubelíkově ulici na Žižkově
   waiter Karel Č. lives on 3rd floor in Kubelík street on Žižkov

If the address does not constitute a syntactic part of the sentence, the following rules obtain:

1. The name of the addressee (person or institution) is suspended as the highest node.
2. The address and the telephone number are suspended on the name as its daughters.
3. The governing node of the whole address is the governing node of that part of the address that has the highest priority in the following list:
   state - country - province - region - district - city - quarter (of the city) - street (square, place) - building (hotel, institution, ...) - floor - P.O. Box - section.
   Other parts are suspended on the governor and are assigned afun A\text{tr}.
4. The inner structure of the individual parts of the address (name, the governing part and the rest) are analyzed in the usual way (e.g. České Czech as the attribute of republika Republic, Králové is the attribute of Hradec, 13 the attribute of Bořivojova ulice (B. street).
5. The zip code (PSČ in Czech) is analyzed as an A\text{tr} to that part of the address to which it belongs; in Czech, this is always the town.
6. A punctuation mark such as comma is always suspended on the main node of that part that precedes it, only the brackets are suspended according to the general rules (on the part that is bracketted).
7. Complex numerical expressions (in a zip code or in a telephone number) are suspended one under the other from the left to the right.
3. Rules of annotation

Examples:

1. kontakt: firma Vyšinka, Kubelíkova 9, 13000 Praha 3, tel 623101012
   contact: firm Vyšinka, Kubelíkova-street 9, 13000 Praha 3, tel 623101012

2. Viđ, tel./fax: (069) 23 13 98, l. 260
3. Rules of annotation

3. we-negotiated Aux with a.s. Filuta-Instr and firm-Instr Vyšinka-Nom

Filuta s. r. o.
3. Rules of annotation

From the above illustrations it follows that an abbreviation may also act as the governor, if the name is not in the corresponding morphemic case; this is done in order to meet the conditions of grammatical agreement or government (e.g. of a preposition). However, such an instance is never classified as an apposition.
3.6.3. Expression with numerals, figures in different functions

6.3.1. Representation of a numerical expression of quantity

In the analysis of these constructions we are guided by the way how the constructions are read. The following rules obtain:

**Rule 1:**
The analyzed complex is divided into two parts, one expressing the number and one expressing the counted objects (i.e. the nouns with their modifications). The inner structure of the latter part is determined according to the general rules on Atr and will not be dealt with in this section. In the sequel we refer to the whole construction expressing the counted object as to the representative.
If such expressions as *tisíc* (thousand), *milion* (million), *sto* (hundred), *stovka* (a hundred), *setina* (a hundredth) behave as nous, they are treated as such. The following constructions are easy to analyze by general rules:

1. \[ \text{tisíc lidí snědl desetinu tuny veprůvého masa} \]
   - *a-thousand of-people ate a-tenth of-ton of-pork meat*

2. \[ \text{zvítězil se stem procent hlasů} \]
   - *he-won with a-hundred of-percent of-votes*

In general it may be said that the part expressing the quantity begins (if processed from the end to the left) with the first real numeral, or, as the case may be (as we will see with more complex examples in Rule 3) where there is a place for such a numeral, though the numeral itself is missing because of a specific shape of the whole number. This part, too, is later analyzed in order to get a single representative.

**Note**

Even in this part there may occur a noun and an embedded segment that is analyzed as if it were another part with a numerical expression of quantity (see Rule 3).
3. Rules of annotation

Rule 2:
We determine which part is the governor and which is the dependent; this relation is represented by suspending the representative of the second part on the representative of the first one. The counted objects have priority - if an expression of quantity agrees with the representative of the counted objects, then this representative is the governor. If the agreement is not observed, the role of the governor is taken over by the expression of quantity.

In the following examples both parts are present, both filled in by a single node, which is also their representative. In the first example, the counted object is the governor, in the second case the counted object depends on the expression for the quantity.

The governor is assigned a function according to the function of the whole complex in the sentence, the representative of the dependent is assigned a function ATR.

1. 

viděl čtyři vrány
he-saw four crows

2. 

viděl pět vran
he-saw five crows

Rule 3:
In order to determine the structure of an expression of quantity, we have first to divide the whole part into segments each of which stands for one rank; it should be noted that these ranks are not ranks in the mathematical sense. These segments contain the number of units, tens, hundreds and then thousands, millions etc. the rank of units and tens will have a one-word expression (i.e. they will be represented by a single node), the rank of hundreds can be expressed by two words (tři sta three hundred-Plural) and higher ranks by more complex expressions (pět set padesát pět milionů
3. Rules of annotation

is a single segment). With these more complex examples a noun occurs that expresses the rank, and their inner structure is accounted for by the same rules as the structure of the whole (the noun renders the counted object, the rest is the quantity). On a higher level we work with the head nodes of all these ranks (segments).

The most important rank is chosen, the head node of which becomes the representative of the whole part expressing the quantity, and it becomes the governor of all the remaining nodes. The governing rank is usually the lowest rank, but there are exceptions to the rule. If the part expressing the quantity is subordinated to the part of the counted objects, the lowest rank is determined as the governor. However, if the quantity is superordinated to the objects counted, the governing rank is the lowest of those that agree with the noun of the counted objects; this might be also the second rank from the left.

All dependent ranks (their governing nodes) are assigned a fun Aτ x.

The following examples illustrate the case when two ranks are present. In the first two examples the part rendering the counted objects is superordinated and therefore the lowest rank is the highest node in that part. In examples that follow, the nodes rendering the counted objects are subordinated to those expressing the quantity.

1. 

\[
\text{viděl} \quad \text{třicet čtyři vrány} \quad \text{he-saw thirty four crows}
\]

2. 

\[
\text{viděl} \quad \text{milion čtyři vrány} \quad \text{he-saw million (and)four crows}
\]
3. Rules of annotation

3. viděl třicet pět vran
   he-saw thirty five crows

4. viděl třicet čtyři vran
   he-saw thirty four crows

5. viděl milion čtyři vran
   he-saw million four crows

Let us exemplify some more complex structures with higher ranks rendered by multiword expressions. In the following example, the counted object is vrány (crows); the word dvě (two) is a proper numeral and therefore the rest of the whole construction (i.e. tři miliony čtyři sta pět tisíc třicet dvě three million four hundred (and) five thousand (and) thirty two) belongs to the quantity part. The word vrány (crows) is in the corresponding inflected form as determined by the verb viděl (he-saw) and as such will be the governor of the whole complex expression. The part expressing the quantity can be decomposed into the following rank segments: tři miliony (three million), čtyři sta pět tisíc (four hundred and five thousand), pět set (five hundred), třicet (thirty), dvě (two). Since in our example the quantity part depends on the part expressing the counted object, the lowest rank will be the governor. The node for dvě will be thus suspended under vrány and the representatives of other ranks will be suspended under it. The second lowest rank is that of třicet; it consists
3. Rules of annotation

of a single node and it may depend directly on the node *dvě*. Other ranks include also nouns expressing the quantity (*set, tisíc, miliony*); these nouns acquire the function of “embedded” counted objects. Let us analyze the rank *pět set* (*five hundred*). The quantity is expressed by *pět*, the counted object is *set*; to determine the direction of dependency, we have to consider that the Genitive form *set* is determined (“governed”) by the numeral, and as such it functions as a dependent. The node *pět* is thus suspended under the node *dvě* and the node *set* depends on the node *pět*. A similar situation obtains with the rank *tři miliony* (*three million*), only the direction of dependency will be opposite. The most difficult situation occurs with the rank of thousands: the quantity part is constituted by *čtyři sta pět* (*four hundred (and) five*), and in turn it has two ranks. The counted part *tisíc* (Genitive here) will depend on the quantity part, where the lowest rank will be the governor, so that the node for *pět* will be suspended under the node for *dvě* and the latter will be the governor of both *tisíc* and the second rank present, in which *sta* will be the governor with the node *čtyři* suspended under it.

The second example will be described only briefly. The counted object is *vran* (*crows*); since it does not have the form required by the verb, this node will depend on the representative of the quantity part. This part has two ranks: *tři sta padesát čtyři milionů* (*three hundred fifty four million*) and *šest set tisíc* (*six hundred thousand*). The lowest rank in the whole expression is the rank of thousands, and therefore it will be the governor. The representative of this rank is the node *šest* (*six*) and as such will be suspended as the highest one; the node for the counted object (*vran crows*)
3. Rules of annotation

and the represenative of the second rank *padesát* (*fifty*) will be suspended on it. The inner structure of both ranks is clear.

Let us note one important fact: The boundary line between the quantity part and that of the counted object has been drawn after the word *tisíc* (*thousand*), which is considered here to be a noun in Genitive. This was possible because the quantity of crows is expressed by two ranks and the words *tisíc* and *milionů* are in a sense on the same level. In the following example, only one rank is present, so that the words *tisíc* and even *set* can be included into the part of counted objects; the quantity part is then constituted only by the node for *šest*.

However, not even the rules formulated above can cover all cases of numerical expressions. For example, the issue of decimal numbers still remains problematic.
3. Rules of annotation

In the following examples, morphology determines which words will act as governors: celých (‘wholes’-Genitive), desetiny (tenths) or the figures 2 or 5. The afun assigned to the governor (or, as the case may be, to the coordination) follows from its syntactic position in the sentence (in our case, it is the subject). The number of units determines the representation of the whole decimal number; in our examples, this is the node for procента (percent), which is not identical to the notion of a representative from the preceding paragraphs. This is given by the special feature of decimal expressions, namely by the two-member character of their representation.

1.

2 celé a 5 desetin procenta zemřelo
2 whole and 5 tenths of-a-percent died

2.

5 celých 2 desetiny procenta zemřelo
5 whole 2 tenths of-a-percent died
3. Rules of annotation

3.

5 celých 5 procenta zemřelo
5 whole 2 of-a-percent died

4.

2 , 2 procenta zemřelo
2 . 2 of-a-percent died

5.

2.5 procenta zemřelo
2.5 of-a-percent died

6.3.2. Numerals of the type více

Such numerals as více (more), méně (less), mnoho (many), málo (few), středně (medium) etc., if in Nominative or Accusative case, can act as governors for both Adv and Atr (at the same time).

The conjunction než (than) is discussed in 3.6.9. Phrases of comparison with conjunctions jako (as), než (than), esp. in paragraph IV, Appendix 3.
3. Rules of annotation

1. 

you-will-see much less people

2. 

I-will-drink more than five beers

6.3.3. Genitive in the function of Sb, Obj and in the function of their Atr

With numerals such as jedna (one) through čtyři (four) the general rules stated in the corresponding sections on sentence parts obtain. The direction of dependency and agreement functions require naturally with them.

1. 

students were three
3. Rules of annotation

2.

vesta mi stačí jedna
vest me suffices one
one vest is enough for me

With numerals from pět (five) on, the situation is more complicated. With Nominative (Sb) and Accusative (Obj), the counted object has the form of Genitive and the verb agrees in Number and Gender with the numeral; since this phenomenon is very problematic, we had to accept a solution that is not very clean from the linguistic point of view.

A partitive Genitive thus can be a Sb or an Obj, but if the sentence includes some quantitative expression which governs the noun in Genitive, then Sb or Obj is the governor of this expression and the noun in Genitive is its Atr.

A noun in Genitive becomes the Sb only with sentences of the type tam je lidí (there is people-Genitive = there are many people there), přibývá jich (it-grows they-Genitive = they grow in number).

1.

studentů (Atr) v hospodě bylo pět (Sb)
students-Gen in pub were five

2. studentů (Atr) přišlo na přednášku pět (Sb)
students-Gen came to lecture five
The students that attended the lecture were five.

3. na světě je lidí (Atr) habaděj (Sb)
in world is people-Gen lot
There are lots of people in the world
3. Rules of annotation

4. *zeleniny* (Gen) je málo (Sb)
   vegetable-Gen is a-little
   *There is little of vegetables.*

5. *zeleniny* (Gen) máme málo (Obj)
   vegetables-Gen we-have a-little

6. *zeleniny* (Gen) si můžeme vzít hodně (Obj)
   vegetables-Gen Refl we-may take a-lot
   *of vegetables we may take what we can carry away*

7. *zeleniny* (Gen) si můžeme vzít, co uneseme (Obj)
   vegetables-Gen Refl we-may take what we-can-carry
   *of vegetables we may take what we can carry away*

8. slušných *lidí* (Gen) je jako šafránu (Sb)
   decent people-Gen is as saffron
   *of decent people there is precious little*

9. *piv* (Atr) mi stačí deset (Sb)
   beer-Gen me suffices ten
   *ten (glasses of) beer(s) is enough for me*

6.3.4. Representation of arithmetical expressions

The following examples illustrate an analysis of the inner structure of arithmetical expressions.
3. Rules of annotation

1. $1 + 2 = 9 - 6$

2. výsledek byl $1 + 2 = 9 - 6$
result was $1 + 2 = 9 - 6$

6.3.5. Representation of some numerical codes

1. Čtyřlístek 8/94
Quaterfoil 8/94

274
3. Rules of annotation

3.6.4. Referring words

6.4.1. Referring pronoun to (that)

The referring pronoun to (that, it) at the beginning of an embedded clause is assigned the respective function it subsumes in the governing clause, the embedded clause gets a functor $\alpha$ and it is suspended on to, without regard to the “direction” (forward - to an embedded clause, or backward - to a person/event) of the coreference. The embedded clause may be introduced by a conjunction (že that, aby in order to, zda whether) or it may be a relative clause.
3. Rules of annotation

1. je to tím, že trucuje
   is it by-it that s/he-is-in-the-sulks
   this is because s/he is in a fit of the sulks

2. to, co zažil, ho zničilo
   it what he-experienced him destroyed
   what he had experienced destroyed him

3. mluvila s tím, koho potkala
   she-spoke with that whom she-met
   she was speaking with whom she met
3. Rules of annotation

4. 

The longer he reflected, the less he knew.

5. 

The older he is, the more experienced he is.
3. Rules of annotation

6. vrával čím dál tím více
he-tottered what-\textit{Instr} longer that-\textit{Instr} more
he tottered more and more

Cases with an infinitive in place of an embedded clause are treated in a similar way.

snil o tom žít u moře
he-dreamt about that to-live by sea
he dreamt (that) he was living by the sea

With some prepositions, the pronoun \textit{to} (that should follow them) is deleted and an embedded clause follows immediately. This clause is suspended under the preposition and takes over the afun that would be assigned to \textit{to}. 
3. Rules of annotation

1. místo toho, aby povstal, seděl nečinně dál
instead of that so that he got up he was sitting idly further
instead of standing up he went on sitting idly

2. místo, aby povstal, seděl nečinně dál
instead so that he got up he was sitting idly further
instead of standing up he went on sitting idly

If only some of the members of the embedded clause remain(s) after deletion of the rest, it is assigned afun ExD (to indicate that the predicate is missing). It is, however, necessary to distinguish between cases of deletion (in which an element is left behind) as in examples (1) and (2) below, and those of prepositional cases: in (3) the form (the Instrument case) of the word pivo (beer) is determined by the preposition místo (instead of), the whole construction is an Adv and there is no referring to missing.

1. místo ve středu chodil ve čtvrtek
instead of on Wednesdays he used to come on Thursdays

2. místo pivem ho polil mlékem
instead of by beer him he poured by milk
instead of beer he poured milk on him
3. Rules of annotation

3. místo piva ustrkávala vínečko
instead-of beer she-sipped wine

6.4.2. Referring words with adverbial embedded clauses

An embedded clause may be introduced by such expressions as tak (so), (do)tehdy (until), tolik (so much), poté/mezitím/zatím, co/když/jak (after/in between/still when/what/how), odtud,kam/odkud/kde (from where, where), proto/přesto, že (because/though that). Both the referring word and the embedded clauses are suspended side by side and are assigned a fun Adv.

1.

![Diagram 1]

je to tak, že nespím
is it so that I do not sleep
the thing is that I can’t sleep

2.

![Diagram 2]

pracuji tak, jak to umím
I work so as it I can
I’m working the way I know
3. Rules of annotation

3. přijedu tehdy, až to dopíšu
I-will-arrive then when it I-finish-writing
I shall come after I finish writing it

4. otevřeli poté, co vstali
they-opened after-that when they-got-up
they have openened after they got up

5. nadával proto, že dlouho spali
he-sweared because that long they-slept
he used bad language because they were sleeping long
6.4.3. Referring takový (such)

If the word takový (such) is placed immediately before an embedded clause, it is assigned the respective function it would have within the main clause (Pnom, Atr, Atv) and the embedded clause is suspended on this word with a fun Adv.

Note

If the word takový is not immediately followed by a comma, it itself is an Atr and the embedded clause is either an Atr depending on the noun modified by takový, or it has its usual function determined by the verb (of the main clause) on which it is suspended.

1.

on je vedoucí takový, že jim závidíme
he is manager such that them we-envy
he is such a manager that we envy them
3. Rules of annotation

jejich vedoucí je takový, že jim závidíme their manager is such that them we-envy

vedoucího nám přidělili takového, jaký se jim hodil manager to-us they-appointed such as Refl them suited

they have appointed to us a manager which suited them

3.6.5. The boundary line between free and 'bound' dative

Free dative is traditionally classified as an Obj, in spite of the fact that its kinds differ in their syntactic function (Obj, Adv, AuxO). Since free dative is not determined by a verb or by an adjective, it is commonly used also with intransitive verbs. Its use is motivated semantically.

Six types of free dative can be distinguished:

- dative of contact (AuxO)
- emotional dative (AuxO)
- possessive dative (Adv)
- adverbial dative of regard (Adv)
3. Rules of annotation

- dative of benefit (Obj or Adv)
- dative of subject (Obj)

Dative of contact renders the function of making and maintaining a contact (to váš byla zábava that you-Dat was an entertainment, včera jsem ti nemohl usnout yesterday I you-Dat could not get asleep, on ti byl celý nesvůj he you-Dat was out of his humour). A contact function is expressed also by a dative of interest (kysešina nám začíná reagovat the acid us-Dat begins to react, běží nám osmá minuta the second minute us-Dat runs, neparkujte nám na trávě don’t park us-Dat on the lawn).

An emotional dative makes the utterance affective (to je mi pěkný začátek this is me-Dat a good beginning, ty nám tu lenošit nebudeš you us-Dat won’t idle away your time here).

A possessive dative is assigned afun Adv (příteli se ztratil pes friend-Dat a dog got lost, v uších mu hučelo ears him-Dat tingly, tetě se zalesknou oči to-aunt eyes glitter, hodinky mi jdou špatně the watch me-Dat doesn’t go). Possessive dative can be replaced by a possessive pronoun or adjective: šlápl bratrovi na nohu (he stepped brother-Dat on foot) can be reformulated as šlápl na bratrovu nohu (he stepped on his brother’s foot). Cf. 3.2.5. Adverbials (and borderline cases).

An adverbial dative of regard is also assigned afun Adv: dětem to přišlo vhod (children-Dat it came in handy), státu tím vznikají škody (state-Dat damages arise due to it). Cf. 3.2.5. Adverbials (and borderline cases).

The boundary line between an optional Obj determined by valency and a dative of benefit is often vague. With a dative of benefit, the decision between Obj and Adv is made according to the meaning that can be recognized from the context. For example in Jirka napsal Pavlovi dopis (Jirka wrote a letter to Paul) the word Pavlovi (Paul-Dat) is assigned Obj if the meaning of the sentence is Jirka něco sdělil Pavlovi dopisem (Jirka told something to Paul by means of a letter); it is assigned Adv if the meaning is Jirka napsal dopis pro Pavla (místo Pavla) někomu (Jirka wrote a letter in place of Pavel to somebody). If we are not able to distinguish the given meaning, Obj is given priority because it is a valency slot though an optional one. In other cases dative of benefit is assigned Adv: natrhala jim jim hrušky (I picked them-Dat pears). A good help is to try and replace the given form by a prepositional case with the preposition pro (for). Cf. also 3.2.4. Object Obj, ObjAtr, AtrObj and 3.2.5. Adverbials (and borderline cases).

A dative of subject is always assigned Obj: chce se mi pít (it-wants me-Dat to-drink, I want to drink), nemocnému se dýchá lépe (the patient it-breathes better, the patient breathes better), majorovi se tam sedělo dobře (major-Dat it-sat there well, the major liked to sit there), co je mu? (what is him-Dat, what is the matter with him), bylo jim 17 let (it-was them-Dat 17 years, they were 17 years old); cf. 3.2.4. Object Obj, ObjAtr, AtrObj. The following constructions, however, do not include a dative of
subject: bylo mi špatné/chladno/do smíchu (it-was me-Dat not-well/cold/to laugh),
bude to stranám ku prospěchu (it-will-be parties-Dat to benefit, it will be for the
benefit of the parties), je mi to jedno (it-is me-Dat equal, I do not mind), nejbližší
je mi asi husitská církev (closest is me-Dat perhaps the hussite church), jeho způsob
hry mi byl nejsympatičtější (his way of playing me-Dat was most pleasant). In such
sentences dative is assigned a fun Adv.

3.6.6. Collocations, phraseologisms (phrasemes)

6.6.1. representation of collocations

The representation of any construction is guided first of all by its syntactic structure
and syntactic relations. It is true that with collocations these relations are often
suppressed, but in spite of this, we always try to capture at least some meaningful
structure, even though such a structure need not be fully justified by general rules.
The following sentences illustrate the point:

1. ředíme v poměru osm ku třem
we-dilute at ratio eight to three
3. Rules of annotation

2. resignoval den ze dne
   he-resigned day by day

There exist, however, collocations the syntactic structure of which is so doubtful and unclear that it is impossible to propose a reasonable syntactic representation. In such cases we take recourse to a technical representation. This is really the last resort, used only in cases when all other attempts at a meaningful representation fail.

In such cases, the last (i.e. the right-hand side) element is chosen as the governor, suspending it in the position in which the collocation as a whole should be suspended, assigning to it a fun according to that position (i.e. that corresponds to the function of the whole collocation). The rest of nodes are suspended on this selected node and are assigned a fun AuxY.

1. prošel jsem Žižkov křížem krážem
   I traversed Žižkov criss-cross

2. noc co noc flámoval
   night by night he spent on a spree
3.6.7. Accompaniment

6.7.1. Representation of accompaniment

In grammars, the prepositional case “s + Instrumental” (with + Instr) is analyzed as an adverbial of accompaniment. Its representation in our scenario depends on its position in the sentence, esp. on agreement with the predicate.

Under normal circumstances, this prepositional case is an adverbial, and as such it should be suspended on the verb and should be assigned a func Adv. However, this is done only in case that there is a grammatical agreement between the subject and the predicate, as illustrated by the following examples:

1. zpívala Rus  s Němci
   sang-Sing Russian-Sing with German

2. zpívali Rusové  s Němci
   sang-Plur Russians with Germans
3. Rules of annotation

If a semantic rather than grammatical agreement gets priority, and the predicate is in Plural while the subject is in Singular, the accompaniment is suspended on the subject (i.e. on the node with $S_b$) as its $Atr$. This makes it possible to understand the subject as a whole to be an entity understood as a Plural.

The following example illustrates the case when both elements are governed by some common denomination:

zpívali přátelé Rus s Němcem
sang-Plur friends Russian-Sing with German-Sing
3. Rules of annotation

3.6.8. Reflexive se, si

The particle *se* with a verb can be assigned the following afuns: AuxT, Obj, AuxR.

The particle *si* with a verb can be assigned the following functors: AuxT, Obj, Adv, AuxO.

The assignment of these functions is determined by the verbs in question. With many verbs more than a single assignment is possible, and the final decision is to be made on the basis of the given context.

Both particles are suspended on the verb to which they belong, irrespective of the function they carry.

If a noun is derived from the given verb (*snažit* to try —> *snažení* trying), the particles are always assigned afun AuxT without regard to what kind of afun they would get if they were attached to the source verb.

6.8.1. Reflexive se

SE 1
This is a case of “reflexivum tantum”, AuxT: the verb does not occur without the particle or if the particle is taken away, the verb has a different meaning: *bojí se* s/he-is-afraid, *snaží se* s/he-tries, *směje se* s/he-laughs, *setkali se* they-met.

The same solution is accepted for some derivatives of the “manner of the action”: *nadřel se* he-drudged.

SE 2
The particle *se* is an object (Obj), sometimes this function is evident:

1. *vidí se* (sebe, ne Jendu) v zrcadle he sees himself (not Jenda) in the mirror,
2. *myje se* (sebe, ne děti) he washes himself (not the children), *brání se* (sebe, ne vlast) he defends himself (not his country),
3. in a reciprocal meaning (mutually, each other): *líbají se* (navzájem) they kiss themselves, *odloučili se* (od sebe navzájem) they left each other.

If the construction corresponds to the condition under SE 1, the particle *se* is assigned afun AuxT and the possibility to assign it an Obj is not taken into account.
3. Rules of annotation

SE 3
This is the case of reflexive passive, assigned AuxR, with both transitive and intransitive verbs:

1. tancovalo se až do rána they/we danced until morning, šlo se cestou necestou they/we went through thick and thin,
2. v novinách se píše o projevu in newspapers they write about the speech, diskutovalo se o objevu a discovery was discussed, přirozený jazyk se popisuje formálními prostředky natural language is described by formal means,
3. a colloquial use: občané se vyzývají, aby se dostavili the citizens are asked to come (the subject is animate)
4. a construction of “disposition” (medio-passive): matematika se mu studuje lehce mathematics is easy to study for him, v téhle troubě se dobře peče it is easy to bake in this oven, ta kniha se snadno prodává the book sells well,
5. also causatives of the following type belong here: léčím se u prof. Myslivečka I undergo medical treatment at prof. Mysliveček, holí se/stříhá se v Šarmu he shaves (himself)/has his haircut in Šarm, obléká se u Nehery he dresses (himself) at Nehera.

SE 4
This particle has a similar function as a derivational suffix (in case of an unconscious action); a replacement by an object is less evident and a decision is to be made between Obj and AuxR:

1. Obj with an unconscious action: zabil se he got killed, utopil se he got drowned,
2. otherwise AuxR is assigned: dveře se otevírají the door opens, vlny se šíří všemi směry the waves propagate, napětí se snižuje the voltage drops down.

We use the codition (1) only if the situation is completely clear.

SE 5
If a noun is derived from the given verb (snažit to try → snažení trying), the particles are always assigned afun Aux: snažení se trying, mytí se washing, utopení se drowning.

6.8.2. Reflexive si

SI 1
This is an analogy to SE 1: AuxT is assigned only with the dative si: pospíšit si to hurry up, vážit si to respect something/somebody, postesknout si to complain, pamatovat si to remember.

SI 2
The reflexive pronoun is Obj:
3. Rules of annotation

1. přečíst si (sobě) to read (for oneself), říkat si to ask for, stanovit si to prescribe (to oneself)
2. reciprocal use: slibovali si (navzájem) they-promised to each other, posloužili si (navzájem) they helped (each other), přísahali si they swore (to each other).

SI 3
This is an analogy to SE 4, but we have decided to assign Adv in those cases in which si has the function of a free dative (dative of benefit); a paraphrase by for oneself or by one’s is possible: upevnit si (postavení) to strengthen one’s position, upravovat si (vlasy) to set one’s hair, brousit si (zuby) set one’s heart upon, vydělat si (peníze) to earn money, uchovat si (postavení) to keep (one’s position).

SI 4
In this function, si is assigned AuxO; it is somewhat superflous, and can be deleted without a loss of meaning or grammaticality: jít si na výlet to go for a trip, mazat si to domů to hurry home, počkat si na někoho to have to wait for somebody, už si odpracoval dvě hodiny he has already worked off two hours.

SI 5
In case of derivations from verbs, the derived nouns are assigned afun Atr: postesknutí si complaining, posloužení si serving (oneself), vydělání si earning (for oneself).

3.6.9. Phrases of comparison with conjunctions jako (as), než (than)

The expression jako (as) is ambiguous and it can be used also in other phrases than those of comparison, see esp. sect. 2.7.7.4. The conjunction jako introducing complement or object, the relevant parts of the sections devoted to complements and objects, and the sect. 2.3.4.5. Non-agreeing attribute expressed by a noun introduced by the conjunction jako (as, like) and 2.3.4.9. Attribute expressed by a subordinate clause.

The conjunction než (than) can introduce also a specific case of subject (see 2.2.3.17. Subject introduced by the conjunction než (than, but)).

3.6.9.1. The placement of the conjunction

The conjunction než requires an adverb or an adjective (esp. in the comparative) to be present, with which the comparison is being made; therefore, než is suspended on this adverb or adjective.

In the phrase stejně jako (similarly as) the expression stejně can be deleted; if stejně is present, then jako depends on it; if stejně is missing, then jako is suspended under
3. Rules of annotation

that node that would be its governor without a violation of any syntactic relation (i.e. the absence of the word stejně is not a good reason to use afun ExD in case where it would not be used otherwise).

3.6.9.2. Syntactic function of comparison

The structures with conjunctions jako and než expressing comparison are regarded as adverbials (Adv); however, deletions are frequent, in which case afun ExD is assigned. See also 2.5.7.6. Adverbial expressed by a clause (or a group) with conjunctions jak(o) - as, než(li) - than.

3.6.9.3. Structures assigned Adv

6.9.3.1. A complete embedded clause

If jako/než is followed by a full embedded clause (containing a tensed verb), the clause depends on the expressions of comparison (stejný/stejně jako similar as, velký jako big as, jinde než elsewhere, jinak než otherwise. The expression stejný/stejně can be deleted and then the clause is suspended on the node where this expression would have been suspended.

1. vypadá jinak, než vypadal včera
he-looks other than he-looked yesterday
he looks different from how he looked yesterday
3. Rules of annotation

2. vypadá, jako vypadal včera
   he looks as he looked yesterday

3. vypadá stejně jako vypadal včera
   he looks the same way as he looked yesterday

4. vypadá, jako by zhubl
   he looks as if would he lost weight
   he looks like having got leaner
3. Rules of annotation

5. vypadá, jako kdyby zhul
he-looks as-if would he-lost-weight
he looks like having got leaner

6. viděl motýla, který byl takový, jako by zářil
he-saw butterfly that was such as would he-shine
he saw a butterfly that was as if it was shining
3. Rules of annotation

7. viděl motýla, který jako by záril
he-saw butterfly that as would he-shine
he saw a butterfly that was like shining

The sentence in the last example is a full embedded clause (jako by záril as would he-shine), but it will get a fun ExD because the governor, namely the expression of comparison takový (such) is missing (this expression is present in the previous example).

**Warning**

If jako/nej is followed first by another subordinating conjunction and only then a tensed verb (as in přinesl mi jiné knihy, než když tu byl minule he brought me different books than when he was here last time), the clause is treated as an ellipsis (see 3.6.9.4. Phrases assigned ExD below) and assigned a fun ExD.

**6.9.3.2. A syntactically suitable element**

If a complete embedded clause has not been found, it is necessary to decide whether the element standing in its place may get a fun Adv or if an ellipsis is the case (ExD).

Adv is assigned if both elements that are compared are on the 'same' level, which can be determined on the basis of the following three criteria:

- nothing can be inserted into the phrase of comparison (ex. (1) cannot be reformulated as pověsil obrázek níž než to pověsil pod okno he hanged the picture lower than he hang it under the window),
- the element following the conjunction could be placed in the position where the original phrase was placed (ex. (1) can be transformed as pověsil to pod okno he hanged it under window),
3. Rules of annotation

- the element following the conjunction is semantically “equivalent” to the element before the conjunction; if the element before the conjunction is in comparative, it is necessary to use its basic form: in this sense, the expressions *nízko* (low) and *pod okno* (under the window) are “equivalent” in (1).

1. pověsil obrázek níž než pod okno
   he-hanged picture lower than under window

2. udělal to stejně kvalitně jako rychle
   he-made it equally well as quickly
   *he made it as perfectly as quickly*

3. hraje déle než 30 let
   he-plays longer than 30 years

4. je starostí víc než dost
   there-is sorrows more than enough

5. koupíme to jinde než na trhu
   we-shall-buy it somewhere-else than on market
3. Rules of annotation

3.6.9.4. Phrases assigned ExD

The phrases of comparison are elliptical: the verb is followed by one or more elements, without a verb, so that they cannot be treated according to the points mentioned above (one of these members may be an embedded clause that would modify the predicate of the immediately subordinated clause - see the warning in point 6.9.3.1. A complete embedded clause above). For such cases, we use ExD (see also part 3.1.3.3. Ellipsis of predicate in clauses introduced by conjunctions jak(o) (like), než(li) (than)).

1. ztráta větší než miliarda
   loss greater than billion (= than is a billion)

2. velká jako hrom
   great as thunder

3. malý jako dlaň
   small as palm

4. je to šroubek méně kvalitní než jiné západní šroubky
   is it screw less perfect than other western screws

5. cíl je mít ceny nižší než konkurence
   objective is to-have prices lower than competitors

6. dorazili dříve než Jirka
   they-arrived sooner than Jirka

7. Jan oslovil docenta zdvořileji než kamarád
   Jan addressed assistant more-politely than friend

   (= than he addressed his friend)
3. Rules of annotation

8. Jan oslovil docenta zdvořileji než kamarád
   Jan addressed assistant more-politely than friend

   (= than he was addressed by his friend)

9. hovořili o ní spíše jako o modelu než jako o
   they-spoke about it rather as about model than as about
   konečné pravdě
   definite truth

3.6.9.5. Addition 1

There will be few cases of the type 6.9.3.2. A syntactically suitable element, cf. the
ambiguity with *udělal to jindy než včera* (he did it at another time than yesterday):

1. Adv: *he did it on some other day than yesterday*
   ExxD: *on some other day than he did it yesterday*
3.6.9.6. Addition 2

Let us present some more examples with the conjunction \textit{jako}:

1. udělá to úplně stejně tak rychlé \textit{jako} Tonda  
   
   udělá to úplně stejně tak rychlé \textit{jako} Tonda  
   
   he-did it completely equally so quickly as Tonda

2. udělá to stejně rychlé \textit{jako} Tonda  
   
   udělá to stejně rychlé \textit{jako} Tonda  
   
   he-did it equally quickly as Tonda
3. Rules of annotation

3. udělal to stejně tak jako Tonda
he-did it equally so as Tonda

4. udělal to rychle jako Tonda
he-did it quickly as Tonda

5. udělal to stejně jako Tonda
he-did it equally as Tonda
3. Rules of annotation

6. udělal to jako Tonda
   he-did it as Tonda

In ex. (1), (2) and (4) the position of the word Tonda (ExD) can be occupied e.g. by the word *kvalitně* (perfectly) with a fun Adv. On the other hand, in ex. (3), (5) and (6) such a word cannot be added.

3.6.9.7. Addition 3

Let us present some more examples with the conjunction *než* (than):

1. více piv než tři
   more beers than three
   more glasses of beer than three

2. více než tři piv
   more than three beers-Gen-Sing
3. Rules of annotation

3.

více než šest piv
more than six beers-Gen-Plur

4.

více než šest piv
more than six beers-Gen-Plur

The meaning of (1) is clear: a man was drinking beer and the total of glasses of beer he drank was more than three. In (2) the number of glasses is not so important - the sentence only says that he drank three glasses and something in addition (maybe a liquor, a glass of whisky, milk or perhaps some more glasses of beer). The phrase více než šest piv (more than six glasses of beer) is then ambiguous (this holds for numerals denoting higher numbers than four): this is illustrated by the structures in (3) and (4).

Let us add that with more complicated structures of quantity, the part expressing the quantity is suspended on the conjunction než and the part expressing the counted objects is suspended on the expression více (more). The “scope” of these parts is discussed in part 6.3.1. Representation of a numerical expression of quantity.

3.6.10. Foreign words in the text

The representation of those parts of text that are written in a foreign language is not guided by the syntactic structure of these foreign segments because it would be often difficult to recognize the correct structure. This holds also for cases when the structure is clear.
3. Rules of annotation

After the identification of the string of words of foreign origin (it may be a proper name, some collocation, or even a whole sentence) its “main” node is selected (the “representative”) and assigned a function according to the function of the string in the sentence. If the string is not a part of some syntactic structure, it is assigned a function $\text{ExD}$ and is suspended on the initial symbol #; it follows that a foreign word can never get a function $\text{Pred}$, even if the string contained some predicate, see ex. (6) below).

The choice of the representative depends on the judgement of the annotator. The first candidate is the last element of the string (its rightmost element). However, esp. with names and titles, this function may be taken over by some other word that - in contrast to the last word - is inflected. In a concrete example, this inflection need not be evident (e.g. the name may be in Nominative), but again, the judgement of the annotator is relevant. If more than one word is inflected, the last inflected word is regarded as the representative. The remaining words in the string are suspended on the representative as sisters of each other and are assigned a function $\text{Atr}$.

If graphic symbols are present in the string, they are suspended on the attributes and assigned a function $\text{AuxG}$; they are placed “towards” the “main” node, i.e. they are suspended on that of its neighbouring words that is further from the “main” word. It is not easy to find such a word, though. If some symbol occurs at the very beginning or at the very end of the string, it is suspended directly on the representative (cf. the question mark in ex. (7)).

The foreign word may be sometimes superordinated to some other nodes, which means that there are also nodes suspended on the representative other than those with a function $\text{Atr}$ (and $\text{AuxG}$). This is exemplified by the punctuation marks in (8).

1. zeptali se Ali-fattah Bukatelam Hasran Hubejniho

zeptali se Ali-fattah Bukatelam Hasran Hubejniho
3. Rules of annotation

2. Kim Ir-Sen

3. baronka von Klos
   baroness von Klos

4. baronka von Klosová
   baroness von Klosová (with the feminine ending of proper names -ová)

5. make-up

6. Quo vadis?
3. Rules of annotation

7. nesla knihu Quo vadis?
   she-brought book Quo vadis?

8. řekl: "Čo bolo, to bolo ."
   he-said "Čo bolo, to bolo ."
   (Slovak for: what was that was)

Analysis of (3) and (4): In both examples, the foreign string consists of two nodes: [von Klos], [von Klosová], respectively. In (3), this string is an attribute of the word baronka, while in (4) the name is the representative and the word baronka is its attribute (as a title).

Analysis of (6) and (7): In (6) the foreign component consists of two nodes: [quo vadis]. The question mark indicates that the given string is an interrogative sentence; the question mark does not belong to the foreign string and it is therefore suspended on the symbol #. In (7), the question mark belongs to the foreign string (it is included in the title of the book), and as such is suspended on the representative.

Analysis of (8): The foreign string consists in five nodes: [Čo bolo, to bolo]. The node “bolo” is selected as the representative. The colon, fullstop and the inverted commas are considered to be component parts of the (Czech) text and therefore they are suspended under the main node of the direct speech (according to the general rules for direct speech).
3.6.11. Bibliographical references

6.11.1. Representation of bibliographical references

All bibliographical references are treated in accordance with the rules for the assignment of ExD. The entries in references have no regular syntactic structure, and therefore they are represented as a coordination of non-verbal sentences; this means that the governor of each segment of the reference entry gets afun ExD_Co and the remaining part of that segment is analyzed in the usual way (see ex. (1)).

However, if the remaining part of the segment has a syntactic structure of its own, it is analyzed according to the usual rules and the rest is suspended under the governor of the whole reference entry. It is assigned afun ExD_Pa (or afun Coord_Pa, in case of coordination, as shown by (2)). Such an approach is in accordance with the rules for parenthesis, esp. with 3.5.5. A syntactically non-incorporated sentence part or sentential form; ellipsis; an independent sentence part; vocative; interjection Exd_Pa.

1. Pán prstenů, JRR Tolkien, Mladá fronta, Praha 1990
   The-Lord of-the-rings, JRR Tolkien, Mladá fronta, Praha 1990

2. četl Tolkienova Pána prstenů (Mladá fronta, Praha 1990)
   he-read Tolkien’s The-Lord of-the-rings (Mladá fronta, Praha 1990)

3.6.12. Composed Czech proper names

6.12.1. Representation of composed Czech names

In representations of Czech names with hyphens the second part of the name is suspended under the selected governing node and the hyphen is suspended under that second part. Only in few cases the governing node will be the first node in the string; this occurs in case this first node is “syntactically dominant”, i.e. it is inflected and the second node need not be inflected, it is only an addition (e.g. in (2) we can say jsem z Plzně-město I am from Plzeň-město, i.e. Plzeň is “dominant”).

1. Anežka Bramborová-Konečná

Anežka Bramborová-Konečná
3. Rules of annotation

2. \( Plžen \) - město
   Plžen - city

3. \( Frýdek-Místek \)

### 3.6.13. Freely adjoined sentence parts

#### 6.13.1. Representation of freely adjoined sentence parts

Freely adjoined sentence parts are separated by commas and introduced by such particles as *a* (and), *a sice*, *a to* (*and that* (*is*)); these particles are discussed in part 2.7.7.3. Particles introducing a loosely attached sentence member.

All freely adjoined sentence parts are assigned their usual function and are suspended in the usual way. Commas are suspended in a similar vein as brackets (i.e. the first, opening bracket under the governing node of the first member and the second, closing bracket under the governing node of the last member, see part 2.8.4.3. Bracketing \( \text{AuxG} \)). The introductory particle (with afun \( \text{AuxY} \)) depends on the first member (directly, i.e. not on a preposition, see the examples); if the introductory particle consists of more than one word (*a sice*, *a to*), the first member is suspended under the second member.
3. Rules of annotation

1. usedl, a to v rohu
   he-sat and that in corner
   he sat down, and that in the corner

2. darovali knihu, a sice kupodivu Brňanům
   they-donated book and that strange-to-say to-Brno-people
   they donated a book, and that, strangely, to the Brno people

3. namazal si, a to včera o půlnoci v koupelně
   he-lubricated Refl and that yesterday about midnight in bathroom
   olejem, kolečko od trakaře
   by-oil wheel of barrow
   he lubricated - and that yesterday at midnight in the bathroom with oil - a wheel of a barrow
Chapter 4. Additions

4.1. List of secondary prepositions

Help for annotators: a secondary preposition cannot stand at the very end of the sentence: e.g. Přišel z důvodu. (He came for the reason).

Notation:
The abbreviations N, G, D, A, L, I stand for morphological cases of nouns the preposition belongs to, i.e. Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Locative and Instrument, respectively.

A à la + N (à la mode)
B během + G (during) bez ohledu na + A (without respect to)
    bez zřetele k + D (without regard to)
    blízko + G (close to)
    blíže + G (closer to)
C cestou + G (by the way of) co do + G (as for)
D daleko + G (far from) díky + D (thanks to)
    dle + G (according to, bookish),
    doprostřed + G (to the middle of)
    do rukou + G (into the hands of)
    dovnitř + G (inside)
J jménem + G (on behalf of)
K kolem + G (around), older: kol koncem + G (by the end of)
    konče + I (ending by)
    kraj + G (the end), bookish
    kromě + G (besides), rare: krom
    k rukám + G (to the hands of)
    kvůli + G (because of)
M mezi + A (where to) mezi + I (where)
    mimo + A (outside)
    místo + G (instead of)
N namísto + G (in place of) naproti + D (opposite to)
    napříč + G (across)
    na rozdíl od + G (in contrast to)
    následkem + G (in consequence of)
    na úkor + G (to the detriment of)
    na úrovni + G (on the level of)
    na úseku + G (on the sector of)
    na vrub + G (on the acount of)
    navzdory + D (in defiance of)
    na základě + G (on the basis of)
    na závěr + G (at the end of)
4. Additions

na způsob + G (similar to)
nedaleko + G (near of)
nehledě k + D (irrespective of)
nezávisle na + L (independent of)

O
ohlédně + G (about) około + G (around)
oproti + D (in contrast to)

P
poblíž + G (near) počátkem + G (at the beginning of)
počínaje + I (beginning with)
podél + G (along)
podle + G (according to)
po dobu + G (for the time of)
pod dojmem + G (under the impression of)
pod tlakem + G (under the pressure of)
pod vlivem + G (under the influence of)
pod záminkou + G (under the pretext of)
po linii + G (along the line of)
pomoci + G (by the help of)
po směru + G (in the direction of)
po stránce + G (as far as ... is concerned)
postupem + G (in the course of)
po vzoru + G (according to the pattern of)
pro případ + G (for the case of)
prostřed + G (in the middle of)
prostřednictvím + G (by means of)
průběhem + G (in the course of)
přiměřeně + D (fitting to)
při příležitosti + G (at the occasion of)
přihlížejte k + D (taking into account)

S
se zřetelem k + D (with regard to) se zřetelem na + A (with regard to)
skrz + A (through)
směrem k + D (in the direction of)
s ohledem k + D (with respect to)
s ohledem na + A (with respect to)
soudě podle + G (judging according)
společně s + I (together with)
spolu s + I (together with)
stran + G (concerning)
stranou + G (aside of)
s výjimkou + G (with the exception of)

U
úměrně k + D (proportionally to) uprostřed + G (in the middle of)

u příležitosti + G (at the occasion of)

V
v čele s + I (headed by) včetně + G (including)
4. Additions

\( v \) duchu + G (in the spirit of)
\( v \) důsledku + G (in the consequence of)
\( vedle + G \) (in addition to)
\( ve \) formě + G (in the form of)
\( ve \) jménu + G (in the name of)
\( ve \) prospěch + G (for the profit of)
\( ve \) shodě s + I (in accordance with)
\( ve \) službách + G (in the service of)
\( ve \) směru + G (in the direction of)
\( ve \) smyslu + G (in the sense of)
\( ve \) spojení s + I (in connection with)
\( ve \) spolupráci s + I (in collaboration with)
\( ve \) srovnání s + I (in comparison with)
\( ve \) stavu + G (in the state of)
\( ve \) středu + G (in the centre of)
\( ve \) světle + G (in the light of)
\( ve \) věci + G (in the matter of)
\( ve \) znamení + G (in sign of)
\( ve \) vztahu k + D (in relation to)
\( vinou + G \) (due to)
\( vlivem + G \) (due to, under the influence of)
\( vně + G \) (beyond)
\( v \) období + G (in the period of)
\( v \) oblasti + G (in the domain of)
\( v \) oboru + G (in the domain of)
\( v \) osobě + G (in the person of)
\( v \) otázce + G (in the issue of)
\( v \) podobě + G (in the form of)
\( v \) procesu + G (in the process of)
\( v \) poměru k + G (in relation to)
\( v \) porovnání s + I (in comparison of)
\( vprostřed + G \) (in the middle of)
\( v \) protikladu k + D (in contrast to)
\( v \) průběhu + D (in the course of)
\( v \) případě + G (in case of)
\( v \) rámci + G (in the framework of)
\( v \) relaci k + D (in relation to)
\( v \) rozporu s + I (in contradiction to)
\( v \) řadě + G (in a number of)
\( v \) souhlase s + I (in accordance with)
\( v \) souladu s + I (in accordance with)
\( v \) souvislosti s + I (in connection with)
\( vůči + D \) (towards)
vyjma + A, rarely + G (except for)

v zájmu + G (in the interest of)
v zastoupení + G (on behalf of)
v závěru + G (in the end of)
v závislosti na + L (in dependence with)
vzdor + D (in spite of)
vzhledem k + D (with regard to)

začátkem + G (at the beginning of) za pomoci + G (with the help of)
za příčinou + G (because of)
zásluhou + G (due to)
za účelem + G (with the aim of)
závěrem + G (at the end of)
ze stanoviska + G (from the point of view of)
ze strany + G (from the side of)
z důvodu + G (for the reason of)
z hlediska + G (from the point of view of)
z nedostatku + G (for the lack of)
z moci + G (from the power of)
z řad + G (from the ranks of)
z titulu + G (from the title of)